

DR. A. L. MEISSNER

German Prose Composition

Hachette and Company

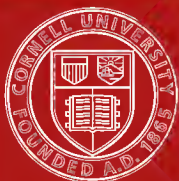
3/6

Cornell University Library

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME
FROM THE
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND
THE GIFT OF
Henry W. Sage
1891

A230294

26/12/08



Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

Hachette's Modern French Authors.—Continued.

Half-Hours with Modern French Authors (Prose and Verse) including typical Extracts from popular Writers of the Day. Choice pieces of high literary merit, providing good and varied material in every kind of style. In Two Parts. Edited with Vocabulary by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L. Each Part. 2 0

Unseen Passages from Modern French Authors (Prose and Verse) for Practice in French Reading and Translation at sight. (Contains the same as in 'Half-Hours with Modern French Authors' (see above) but without Vocabulary or any other 'Aid.') In Two Parts. Each Part. 1 6

Petits Chefs-d'Œuvre contemporains. Short attractive Tales by popular Authors (Arène, Claretie, Coppée, Manpassant, Richepin and Theuriot), with Notes and Vocabulary by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L. 1 6

Gems of Modern French Poetry, including typical Selections from contemporary French Poets (Coppée, Gautier, V. Hugo, Lamartine, Marmel, A. de Musset, Sully-Prudhomme, Theuriot, etc., etc.), with Introduction on French Versification, Vocabulary, etc., by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L. 5 6

Premières Lectures en Prose et en Vers, for Elementary and Intermediate Classes. Interesting Narratives in easy French by Modern Authors, with Conversational Questions and Vocabulary, by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L. 1 0

Tout-à-la-fois, Lectures Primaires Illustrées. (63 Illustrations.) Morceaux faciles avec des Explications, des Questions et des Devoirs. With Vocabulary in Ordinary and Phonetic Spellings, and Introduction explaining the Symbols of the Association Phonétique. Edited by HENRI BUI, B. ès L., *Officier de l'Instruction Publique, late Principal French Master, Christ's Hospital, Horsham, etc.* 1 0

French Lessons on the Direct Method—Beginners' Course. Containing 300 Nouns in Common Use, 160 Verbal Forms, 100 of the most usual Adjectives, Adverbs, etc., and 300 Practical Exercises for Oral or Written Work. By MARC CEPPI, *Senior French Master at King's College School.* 122 pp. Cr. 8vo. Cl. With small reproductions of Hölzel's Conversational Wall Pictures 1 6

Based upon Hölzel's well-known Pictures of the Four Seasons. Every word introduced is worth learning and remembering. The grammatical constructions are of the simplest kind, and can be spontaneously reproduced by the pupil. The French Verbs are taught in the form of an attractive drill. A few simple idiomatic phrases in French occur, but these are well diluted with straightforward matter calculated to give pupils confidence in their power to reproduce what they have learnt.

French Lessons on the Direct Method—Junior Course. 360 Nouns, 88 Verbal Forms, 124 Adjectives, Adverbs, etc., forming with the *Résumé* of the Vocabulary of the 'Beginners' Course,' a total of 1,100 essential Words. By MARC CEPPI, *Senior French Master at King's College School.* 136 pp. Cr. 8vo. Cl. 1 6

A continuation of the author's 'Beginners' Course,' and a much-needed sequel to the numerous text-books based on Hölzel's Pictures. The reading matter is easy and can be readily reproduced; no difficult constructions occur, and in the vocabulary only words of frequent use are given. The stories, dialogues, etc., have been made attractive without being too childish, and although the subjects show great variety, new words are, as far as possible, explained by means of those previously learnt. The verb-drill as developed in the 'Beginner's Course' is continued and amplified. The Guide accompanying the text-matter, page by page, is a novel feature. Running parallel with the text it can be consulted more readily and effectively than can notes at the end of a volume. Revision occurs frequently and constant recapitulation of past lessons form another feature of the work.

GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION

*INTRODUCTORY HINTS, RULES, EXAMPLES, AND
EXERCISES, SELECTED PASSAGES FROM
STANDARD ENGLISH AUTHORS*

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES

AND AN

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY

BY

A. L. MEISSNER, M.A., PH.D., D.LIT.

LIBRARIAN AND PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES
IN QUEEN'S COLLEGE, BELFAST ; MITGLIED DER GESELLSCHAFT
FÜR DAS STUDIUM DER NEUEREN SPRACHEN ZU BERLIN

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

LONDON : 18 KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS

PARIS : 79 BOULEVARD SAINT-GERMAIN

1907

All rights reserved

P R E F A C E

THE introduction and introductory exercises are intended to familiarise the student with the chief differences of English and German construction. Foremost amongst these is the difference in the order of words in principal sentences and dependent clauses. To impress this cardinal difference on the pupil, the first exercises are given in a twofold form: first, exclusively in principal and co-ordinate sentences; and next, in principal sentences combined with relative and dependent clauses. Teachers may find it useful to analyse some of the succeeding exercises in a similar way, especially with pupils whose knowledge of English syntax is limited. To them I should recommend, as a most helpful auxiliary, the late Professor W. D. Whitney's *Essentials of English Grammar*, or Professor John Earle's *Simple Grammar of English now in Use*.

Another great difficulty in translating from English into German is the rendering of the Attributes of the substantive. This matter I have treated at some length in the Introduction, and shown by warning examples into what enormities even German translators of reputation have been led, and suggested easy means of how to avoid them.

The English participial constructions and contracted sentences, though treated at sufficient length in my Public School German Grammar, receive some further elucidation. As this subject is inexhaustible, teachers

will find ample additional material in the two English Grammars mentioned above.

A few of the Introductory Exercises consist of detached sentences, as there would have been little use in giving a long extract, containing perhaps only one or two instances of the construction required.

I have taken great care in compiling the Vocabulary. In many instances where the student will perhaps look in vain for a footnote, he will find the information sought for in the Vocabulary.

In conclusion I have to thank the several publishers and authors, or their respective representatives, for having granted me permission to reprint extracts from their works: Messrs. Blackwood and Son (George Eliot, A. W. Kinglake); Messrs. Chatto and Windus (Justin M'Carthy); the Clarendon Press (Bishop Stubbs); Messrs. Longmans and Co. (H. T. Buckle, W. E. H. Lecky, J. A. Froude); Messrs. Macmillan and Co. (C. Kingsley, Sir A. Geikie, T. Huxley, P. G. Hamerton); Mr. John Murray (Dean Stanley, Lord Mahon); Messrs. Smith, Elder and Co. (Sir A. Helps, Rev. John Earle). Their kindness has enabled me to collect a series of extracts in modern English, presenting both a great variety of interest and form.

QUEEN'S COLLEGE, BELFAST,

Easter 1899.

A KEY to the Introductory Exercises and to the Graduated Selected Passages contained in Dr. A. L. Meissner's 'German Prose Composition' (*for Teachers only*), Crown 8vo, cloth, 3s.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION,	1
ORDER OF WORDS,	6
OF THE SUBSTANTIVE,	7
OF ADJECTIVES AND THE ATTRIBUTES OF THE SUBSTANTIVES,	10
OF PRONOUNS,	14
OF VERBS,	16
OF ADVERBS,	22
OF PREPOSITIONS,	24
OF CONJUNCTIONS,	24

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES I.-XXIV.,	28-45
--	-------

PART II.

GRADUATED SELECTED PASSAGES.

A Voyage,	<i>Charles Kingsley,</i>	46
A Pleasant Host,	<i>Captain Marryat,</i>	49
The Shape of the Earth,	<i>Sir A. Geikie,</i>	52
The Air,	„ „	52
Of the Wind,	„ „	53
The Water of the Sea,	„ „	54
School-Books,	<i>C. Kingsley and T. Huxley,</i>	55
Modern Languages,	<i>P. G. Hamerton,</i>	56

	PAGE
A Great Man, <i>Lord Beaconsfield,</i> . . .	57
The Irish Beggar, <i>Maria Edgeworth,</i> . . .	58
Tom Fool a Knight, <i>Robert Southey,</i> . . .	58
The Art of Keeping in Good	
Health, <i>O. W. Holmes,</i> . . .	59
A Sagacious Dog, <i>W. Cowper,</i> . . .	60
The Growth of Living Animals, . <i>T. H. Huxley,</i> . . .	61
Why Iron Ships do Float, „ „ . . .	62
Peter Simple meets his Captain, . <i>Captain Marryat,</i> . . .	64
Our Boys, <i>Jane Austen,</i> . . .	66
Contrast of the Eighteenth and of	
the Nineteenth Centuries, . . <i>Justin M'Carthy,</i> . . .	67
The Philosophical Vagabond, . . <i>Oliver Goldsmith,</i> . . .	68
An English Politician, <i>Lord Lytton,</i> . . .	70
Brother and Sister, <i>George Eliot,</i> . . .	72
A Letter to a Friend, <i>William Cowper,</i> . . .	77
A Letter to his Nephew, <i>C. J. Fox,</i> . . .	78
A Letter to E. Gihhon, <i>Lady Stanley of Alderly,</i> . .	79
From a Proposed Dedication, . . <i>Lord Byron,</i> . . .	81
English Highwaymen, <i>Lord Mahon,</i> . . .	82
On the Nature of Parts of Speech, <i>John Earle,</i> . . .	87
Elementary Teaching, <i>T. Huxley,</i> . . .	88
Industrialism, <i>P. G. Hamerton,</i> . . .	89
The Costumes of the Eighteenth	
Century, <i>W. G. H. Lecky,</i> . . .	90
The Norman and the Saxon, . . <i>Bishop Stubbs,</i> . . .	91
The Good Kind Governess, . . . <i>W. M. Thackeray,</i> . . .	92
The Prodigal's Return, <i>Washington Irving,</i> . . .	94
The Habits of Authors, <i>O. W. Holmes,</i> . . .	95
Latimer and Wolsey, <i>J. A. Froude,</i> . . .	96
Irish Absenteeism, „ „ . . .	97

	PAGE
The Eastern Church, <i>Dean Stanley,</i>	97
The Dead Sea, <i>A. W. Kinglake,</i>	99
Cromwell, <i>Macaulay,</i>	100
Queen Elizabeth, „	101
The Power of Spain under Philip II., „	102
An Invitation, <i>Jane Austen,</i>	103
The Fruit-basket, <i>Mrs. Gaskell,</i>	108
A Ruined Merchant, <i>W. M. Thackeray,</i>	111
George leaves his Mother, „ „	112
An Unlucky Diplomatist, „ „	115
A First Dinner-Party, <i>Charles Dickens,</i>	116
Housekeeping Accounts, „ „	117
A Theoretical Agriculturist, <i>Sir Walter Scott,</i>	118
The Shetland Fishermen, „ „	121
Only a Weed, <i>Sir A. Helps,</i>	122
The Art of coming to an End, „ „	124
The Influence of Fiction, „ „	125
The Characters of Boys and Men, „ „	126
The Influence of Light, <i>Charles Lamb,</i>	126
The Progress of Medicine, <i>H. T. Buckle,</i>	128
The Sign of the Cross, <i>Edward Gibbon,</i>	128
On Hereditary Monarchy, „ „	131
German Merchants in England, <i>David Hume,</i>	132

INTRODUCTION

FROM the earliest times that we possess German prose documents, the German language has been more subject to the influence of Latin than the other modern European languages. During the middle ages this was owing to the influence of the Latin Church and to the connection of Germany with Italy and the Holy Roman Empire. At the time of the Reformation this influence, far from diminishing, greatly increased. All over Europe the imitation of the Classics, especially of the Roman writers, was held up as the chief aim of the literary classes. Besides this, the universities and public schools, all the liberal professions, talked and wrote Latin ; and when they made use of the vernacular, their style naturally was coloured by the language the habitual use of which distinguished them from the common herd and stamped them as a kind of intellectual aristocracy. Thus it came to pass that one of the earliest English students of German literature could describe a German sentence in these terms :

‘Every German regards a sentence in the light of a package, and a package not for the mail-coach, but for the waggon, into which his privilege is to crowd as much as he possibly can. Having framed a sentence, therefore, he proceeds to pack it, which is effected partly by unwieldy tails and codicils, but chiefly by enormous parenthetical involutions. All qualifications, limitations, exceptions, illustrations, are

stuffed and violently rammed into the bowels of the principal proposition.'—(Thomas De Quincey, *Essay on Rhetoric, Works* x. 65.)

And, in another place, the same writer observes: 'If a whole book were made up of a single sentence, all collateral or subordinate ideas being packed into it as parenthetical intercalations—if this single sentence should even cover an acre of ground, the true German would see in that no want of art, would recognise no opportunities thrown away for the display of beauty. The temple would in his eyes exist, because the materials of the temple—the stone, the lime, the iron, the timber—had been carted to the ground.'—(*Essay on Language, Works* viii., 91.)

This is all very clever and witty, but fails to point out the fact that the construction of these unwieldy sentences was the result of the studies and mental habits of the literary classes for many succeeding generations.

It is generally overlooked that all other European modern languages were and are subject to the same influence. The academic prose of France, from Bossuet to the present day, is redolent of the influence of Latin syntax. There is a sentence of fifty-two lines, covering two pages, in the opening passage of Victor Cousin's *Vie de Madame de Chevreuse*. And of the English prose of his day, De Quincey observes: 'Ever since a more bookish air was impressed upon composition without much effort by the Latinized and artificial phraseology, by forms of expression consecrated to books, and by "long-tailed words in *osity* and *ation*," either because writers felt that already, in this one act of preference shown to the artificial vocabulary, they had done enough to establish a differential character of regular composition, and on

that consideration thought themselves entitled to neglect the combination of their words into sentences or periods; or because there is a real natural sympathy between the Latin phraseology and a Latin structure of sentence; certain it is and remarkable, that our popular style in the common limited sense of arrangement applied to words or the syntax of sentences has laboured with two faults that might have been thought incompatible; it has been artificial, by artifices peculiarly adapted to the powers of the Latin language, and yet at the very time careless and disordinate.'—(*Style, Works* x. 181-182.) Of which statement this very sentence might be considered a good illustration. And as to carelessness, he observes: 'Whatever words tumble out under the blindest accidents of the moment, those are the words retained; whatever sweep is impressed by chance upon the motion of a period, that is the arrangement ratified. To fancy that men thus determinately careless as to the grosser elements of style would pause to survey distant proportions, or to adjust any more delicate symmetries of good composition, would be visionary.'—(*Style, Works* x. 168.)

Next to the Latin, the influence of the French language and literature was most powerful on German. During the middle ages, the literature of which was mainly poetical, this influence was limited to the subject-matter and the vocabulary, but became all-powerful in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, and may be said to have fashioned the German style of the present day. Whilst the French literature of the seventeenth century was the literature of the higher classes and its principal representatives were poets, the literature of the eighteenth century was addressed to the people, and its chief representatives were prose-writers. The great

intellectual movement of the eighteenth century had its origin in France and thence influenced the whole civilised world. Many of the most popular writers of that period, notably Saint-Évremond, who found a tomb in Westminster Abbey, are rarely read to-day, but their influence is felt in the thought and language of the present time. Voltaire, the greatest master of Prose, wielded a power as no literary man before or after him. Lessing, whose great merit was to emancipate the Germans from the tyranny of French models, nevertheless moulded his prose-style on that of Voltaire. Wieland was entirely under French influence, and Goethe and Schiller did not escape it. At the present day, Sudermann, with many others, stands entirely under the influence of France, both as regards style and treatment of subject.

This influence of Latin and French is manifest not only in the literature and language of Germany, but, curiously enough, shows itself as a social factor in the formation of family names. When de Grote (Mr. Long) and de Korte (Mr. Short) talked and wrote Latin, they felt themselves greatly elevated in the social scale by calling themselves Grotius and Curtius; but when they had learned a little French, so as to confound the Low-German article *de* (the) with the French *de*, they felt themselves elevated even above the old Romans as 'von Grote' and 'von Korte.'

There remains one more factor in the formation of modern German prose which has not been sufficiently estimated: the influence of the Greek poets. It is not only the poetry and poetical language of Germany which have been influenced by the translations of Voss and his numerous followers, but the formation, composition, and derivation of words, in syntax the position of the adjective as attribu-

tive apposition, bear witness to the influence of the Greek language.

There is a great resemblance of German Prose to Greek Prose in the use of the connectives. Instead of arranging a series of statements as co-ordinate or independent principal clauses, the conjunctions and adverbial connectives are used to continue the narrative and mould statements naturally belonging together into one harmonious period. As one of the most critical Greek scholars of the present century puts it :

Im Griechischen waltet bei Weitem mehr als in neueren Sprachen das Streben, Begriffe und Sätze durch Konjunktionen zu verbinden und die Rede zu einem wohlgefügt organischen Ganzen zu gestalten. Asyndeta erscheinen daher regelmäßig nur aus besonderen stilistischen Gründen, namentlich um der Rede mehr Lebhaftigkeit und Eindringlichkeit zu geben, oder auch um anzudeuten, daß man noch mehreres Ähnliche denken könne. (K. W. Krüger, Griechische Sprachlehre, Syntag, Sechste Auflage, § 59, p. 248.)

The same applies to German. The general tendency of modern languages is, however, towards simplicity of style. To be readily understood is the object of all writers, and we are at the present day in danger of writing not an epigrammatic but a telegraphic language, devoid of all structure, beauty and harmony.

The old traditional reproach made to German authors of being involved, obscure and prolix, can be made to the authors of the nineteenth century only by those who have not read them. German historians, Ranke, Giesebrecht, Sybel, Schnaase, Treitschke, write as clear and intelligible

a style as the contemporary French and English historians. German novelists, K. E. Franzos, P. Heyse, W. Riehl, G. Keller, H. Sudermann, F. Spielhagen, write each their own peculiar, but clear and simple style, whilst the historical novels of K. Spindler vie with those of Dumas Père in rapidity and interest of narration. The short stories of Hermann Seidel can be strongly recommended to beginners. Even the philosophers and metaphysicians, Kuno Fischer, Wundt, Paulsen, offer no difficulty in the matter of style, and people who profess to understand an English Act of Parliament will be agreeably surprised in reading Heinrich Brunner's *Deutsche Rechtsgeschichte*.

ORDER OF WORDS

1. The German language makes a great distinction, as regards the order of words, between the principal sentence and the dependent clause.

In the principal sentence the subject comes first, next comes the verb, and then the object, if any.

Der Mann schreibt einen Brief.

In the compound tenses of the verb, the object and all other qualifications go between the finite verb and the infinitive or participle.

Der Mann hat einen Brief geschrieben.

Der Mann wird einen Brief schreiben.

2. In the dependent clause the finite verb is removed to the end of the clause.

A dependent clause is a clause beginning with a relative pronoun, a relative adverb, a subordinating conjunction, or a connective adverb.

Der Mann, welcher einen Brief schreibt.

Der Mann, welcher einen Brief geschrieben hat.

Ich wünsche, daß er einen Brief schreibe.

Ich wünschte, daß er einen Brief geschrieben hätte.

3. Whenever the subject does not begin the sentence, some word or words being placed for the sake of emphasis in the beginning of the sentence, an inversion of the subject and verb takes place, *i.e.* the verb is placed before the subject.

Wir waren gestern bei unserm Großvater.

But: Gestern waren wir bei unserm Großvater.

4. We have thus three arrangements of words in German: the normal or regular construction of the principal sentence, the transposed construction of the dependent clause, and the inverted construction.

5. A narrative may consist of nothing but principal sentences; and a period, however complicated, may always be resolved into a number of independent principal sentences (Exercises I.-VI.).

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE

6. COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.—Compound nouns are more frequently formed in German than in English, but unwieldiness should be avoided in their formation. Many so-called compounds correspond exactly to English words placed in simple

juxtaposition : *fire - insurance - company*, Feuerversicherungsgesellschaft; *income-tax*, Einkommensteuer; others are written as compounds also in English, like *schoolboy*, Schulfknabe. Some English substantives of Romanic origin are rendered in German by compounds: *the defile*, der Gebirgspaf; *the campaign*, der Feldzug; whilst some English compounds are represented in German by simple nouns: *the warehouse*, der Speicher. The familiar expressions: *a military, medical, musical man*, must be rendered by ein Soldat, ein Arzt, ein Musiker.

The following are a few examples of compound substantives :—

the autumn evening, der Herbstabend.
 the village school, die Dorfschule.
 a family likeness, eine Familienähnlichkeit.
 society journals, Klatschblätter.
 presence of mind, die Geistesgegenwart.
 style of living, die Lebensweise.
 the close of the year, der Jahreschluß.
 differences of opinion, Meinungsverschiedenheiten.
 castles in the air, Luftschlösser.
 a way out of, ein Ausweg.
 state of siege, der Belagerungszustand.
 liberty of conscience, die Gewissensfreiheit.
 rural life, das Landleben.
 a hired horse, ein Mietpferd.
 civil war, der Bürgerkrieg.
 pecuniary losses, Geldverluste.
 boyish tricks, Knabenstreiche.
 professional engagements, Berufsgeschäfte.

When two compound substantives are formed with the same substantive, it is customary to omit the second component part of the first compound substantive, and to indicate the composition by a hyphen: an Sonn- und Festtagen; in Kriegs- und Friedenszeiten.

7. DIFFERENCE IN THE USE OF THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.—English substantives are used in the plural, but in German in the singular, when a thing belonging to several persons, but to each person separately as well, is spoken of: *He won the hearts of the people*, er gewann das Herz des Volkes; *they seemed all to have lost their heads*, sie schienen alle den Kopf verloren zu haben.

Similar is the English use of the plural in: *the lives of the poets*, Lebensbeschreibungen der Dichter; *murders*, Mordthaten; *misfortunes*, Unglücksfälle; *deaths*, Todesfälle; where, in German, compound substantives are used.

8. Frequently an English substantive in the genitive, depending on another one, is to be rendered in German by an adjective: *brilliancy of wit*, glänzender Wit; *women of rank*, vornehme Frauen; *ships of iron*, eiserne Schiffe; *a man of sense*, ein vernünftiger Mann.

9. Many English substantives in combination with a preposition form adverbial phrases, and may be rendered in German by adverbs. The student should remember that the majority of German adjectives (and participles) may be used adverbially without any change of termination: *in silence*, schweigend; *by verbal communication*, mündlich; *by treaty*, vertragsmäßig; *in form*, förmlich; *by degrees*, allmählich.

OF ADJECTIVES AND THE ATTRIBUTES OF THE SUBSTANTIVE

10. As a general rule, all attributive or qualifying terms or expressions are in German placed before the term qualified. Thus attributive adjectives and participles commonly precede the substantive. But when such adjectives or participles are further qualified by adverbs or otherwise, this arrangement would result frequently in clumsy and obscure constructions. In no particular has the German language undergone such radical changes as in the arrangement of the attributes. Constructions which Lessing declared impossible are now of ordinary occurrence; others, which fifty years ago were considered admissible only in poetry, are now admitted in prose. It is therefore necessary to treat of this matter at greater length.

11. Simple adverbial expressions, used attributively, are best placed after the substantive: *the castle by the sea*, das Schloß am Meere; *the house on the hill*, das Haus auf dem Berge; not: das am Meere liegende Schloß, das auf dem Berge stehende Haus, which are pedantic. If special emphasis is to be laid on the situation, it will be better expressed by die Lage des Schlosses am Meere, des Hauses auf dem Berge.

12. An English adjective following its substantive with further qualifications, may in German be placed before the substantive, and is then inflected; or it may be placed after the substantive in its uninflected form: *A hero worthy of old times*, ein der alten Zeit würdiger Held; ein Held, der alten Zeit würdig.

13. In translating from English into German, the attempt to place the attributes before the noun qualified will frequently lead to the most barbarous constructions. I select a few examples from translations published scarcely half a century ago:—

At one time he [the King of Spain] was induced to believe that his malady was the same with that of the wretches described in the New Testament, zu einer Zeit ward er bestimmt, zu glauben, seine Krankheit wäre dieselbe mit der der im Neuen Testamente beschriebenen Elenden (say rather: wie die der Elenden, welche das N. T. beschreibt).

The contests of parties in England had long been carried on with a ferocity unworthy of a civilised people, die Kämpfe der englischen Parteien waren lange in einer eines gesitteten Volkes unwürdigen Weise geführt worden. Better placed as apposition after the substantive, or as a relative clause.

He was undoubtedly an excellent judge of composition fashioned on his own principles, er war unstreitig ein trefflicher Beurtheiler von nach seinen eigenen Grundsätzen gemodelten Arbeiten. Change either to an apposition or relative clause.

The thing most alien from his clear intellect and his commanding spirit was petty persecution, daß seinem klaren Verstande und seinem gebietenden Geiste am fernsten Liegende war Kleinliche Verfolgung. Either: Was seinem — am fernsten lag, war —; or Nichts lag . . . ferner als . . .

At this time England swarmed with French exiles, driven from their country by the Revolution, zu dieser Zeit wimmelte England von aus ihrem Vaterlande durch die Revolution vertriebenen französischen Exilierten (von Franzosen, die durch die Revolution aus ihrem Vaterlande vertrieben waren).

On one occasion Voltaire put into his Majesty's hand a paper on the state of Europe, and received it back with verses scrawled

on the margin, bei einer Gelegenheit legte Voltaire einen Aufsatz über den Zustand Europas in die Hände seiner Majestät und bekam ihn mit an den Rand gekritzelter Versen zurück (und bekam ihn zurück mit Versen auf den Rand gekritzelt; mit Versen, die der König auf den Rand gekritzelt hatte).

His indignation, virtuous in its origin, sein in sein em Ursprunge tugendhafter Unwille (sein ursprünglich tugendhafter Unwille; sein Unwille, ursprünglich tugendhaft).

She determined to write a new tale on a plan excellently contrived for the display of the powers in which her superiority to other writers lay, sie beschloß eine neue Erzählung, nach einem, zur Entfaltung der Kräfte, in denen ihre Überlegenheit über andre Schriftsteller lag, vortrefflich ersonnenen Plane zu schreiben. *This is a gem, and it is a pity to spoil it.* Sie beschloß einen andern Roman zu schreiben, dessen Plan höchst geschickt angelegt war, zur Entfaltung ihres eigentümlichen Talentes (ihr eigentümliches Talent zu entfalten, in dem sie andre Schriftsteller übertraf).

14. When several attributes precede the substantive, and the substantive is at the same time followed by one or several attributes, it will be best to arrange the various attributes so that the adjectival attributes precede the substantive and the participial ones follow it. Thus:—

An ingenious and diligent population, eminently skilled in arts and manufactures, had been driven into exile by stupid and remorseless bigots, eine sinnreiche und fleißige Bevölkerung, in Künsten und Handwerken ungemein geschickt, war durch dumme und unbarmherzige Frömmeler in die Verbannung getrieben worden. *This is better than: Eine sinnreiche und fleißige, in Künsten und Manufakturarbeiten ausgezeichnet geschickte Bevölkerung war durch dumme und grausame Frömmeler in*

die Verbannung getrieben worden. Or you may place all the attributes after the substantive: Eine Bevölkerung, sinnig und fleißig, in allen Künsten und Handwerken geschickt, war u.s.w.

15. When a participle forms part of the attribute, the construction may frequently be simplified by dropping the participle and changing the attribute into an adverbial apposition: *the garden situated in front of the house*, der Garten vor dem Hause; *the way leading to the town, the gallows*, der Weg nach der Stadt, zum Galgen; *ein Blick in die Ferne*, der Brief an seinen Bruder, *das Licht von oben*, der Baum da, *das Thor nach Salerno hin*, der Anblick den See hinab, der Mann am Steuer.

16. Sometimes the participle may be dropped and the following substantive placed in the attributive genitive: *the methods adopted by the ministry*, die Maßregeln des Ministeriums; *the tactics prescribed by the best military writers*, die Taktik der besten Theoretiker der Kriegswissenschaft; *the ruin produced by a seven years' war*, die Verwüstungen eines siebenjährigen Krieges.

17. Although both English and German have equal facilities for forming derivatives, still there are some derivatives which in English are of common occurrence, whilst in German they would have a strange sound or a different meaning, and are better replaced by a verb.

We doubt whether it be possible to mention a state which has been a gainer by a breach of public faith, wir zweifeln, daß es möglich ist, einen Staat anzuführen, der durch einen Bruch öffentlicher Treue gewonnen hat.

It was the just boast of Schiller, that in his country no Augustus had watched over the infancy of poetry, Schiller

rühmte sich mit Recht, daß in seinem Vaterlande kein Augustus die Kindheit der Poesie bewacht hatte.

Scarcely any comedy, within the memory of the oldest man, had been equally successful, Schwerlich hatte irgend eine Komödie, soweit der älteste Mann sich erinnern konnte, ein gleiches Glück gemacht.

18. Adjectives in -able and -ible may frequently be rendered by the infinitive with zu.

contemptible, verächtlich, zu verachten.

irreclaimable, unverbesserlich, unrettbar, nicht zu retten.

inflexible, unbiegsam, nicht zu beugen.

19. In some phrases the adjective may be, and in others must be, rendered by a substantive.

to be home-sick, an Heimweh leiden, Heimweh haben.

it is pleasant, es macht ein Vergnügen.

20. The frequent repetition of the comparative in English is best expressed by the adverb *immer*: *the sufferer grew worse and worse*, der Leidende, der Patient, wurde immer schlimmer.

OF PRONOUNS

21. The use of the neuter personal pronoun *es* differs greatly from the English *it*. The German *es* seems to the English student frequently redundant.

When the object of a transitive verb consists of an infinitive or an entire clause, this object is anticipated in German by *es*, and, if the neuter pronoun should be governed by a preposition, by the compounds *daran*, *davon*, etc.

Try to convince him, versuche es, ihn zu überzeugen. I doubt that he will come to-day, ich bezweifle es (ich zweifle daran), daß er heute kommen wird.

In answers to questions, containing the verb *to be*, *es* must be inserted in German: *Are you the Captain? I am. Sind Sie der Hauptmann? Ja, ich bin es.—Are you happy? Yes, I am; sind Sie glücklich? Ja, ich bin es.*

In answer to verbs of mood, *es* must be supplied: *Can he read? Yes, he can; Kann er lesen? Ja, er kann es. She ought to tell everything,—no, she need not; sie sollte alles sagen,—nein, sie braucht es nicht.*

22. 'There is,' 'there are,' is translated by *es* giebt, when existence is vaguely indicated, and by *es* ist, when definite existence is to be expressed: *There are men who have a black skin, es giebt Menschen, die eine schwarze Haut haben. There are three horses in the stable, es sind drei Pferde im Stalle. What is the matter? Was giebt es?*

23. The English possessive pronouns used before parts of the body are either not translated or rendered by a personal or reflexive pronoun: *Open your eyes, mache die Augen auf! Sudden prosperity has turned his head, plötzliches Glück hat ihm den Kopf verdreht; he is not in his right mind, er ist nicht bei Sinnen; she tied her handkerchief round his head, sie band ihm ihr Taschentuch um den Kopf.*

This usage is extended to articles of clothing: *Take off your coat, put on your boots, ziehe den Rock aus, ziehe die Stiefel an.*

24. Great difficulties are offered by the pronoun 'what,' usually considered a relative, but really an indefinite pro-

noun. Frequently a substantive will have to be supplied, according to the sense, either from what precedes or follows this pronoun; or the demonstrative *daß* must be inserted before *was*.

Ask no more questions about what it does not become you to inquire, frage mich nicht mehr über Sachen, nach denen du schließlich dich nicht erkundigen darfst.

The truth is, that he was writing about what he did not understand, die Wahrheit ist, er schrieb über Dinge, die er nicht verstand.

We cannot acquit him of having done what, if not in itself evil, was yet of evil example, wir können ihn nicht davon freisprechen, eine That begangen zu haben, die, wenn auch an sich selbst nicht schlecht, doch ein böses Beispiel gab.

I gave away what money I had, das Geld, welches ich hatte, gab ich weg.

He is what you call a prodigy of a child, er ist ein sogenanntes Wunderkind.

OF VERBS

25. The verb 'to be' is used in English frequently in combination with adjectives or adjectival phrases, which require in German verbs or phrases.

it is sufficient, es reicht hin.

he is capable, er ist imstande.

she was all in tears, sie zerfloß in Thränen.

the spirit was upon him, der Geist ruhte auf ihm.

to be content, sich begnügen.

what is she like? wie sieht sie aus?

to be desirous, wünschen.

to be angry, zürnen.

to be fond of, gern haben, lieben.

he is deficient in, es gebricht ihm an.

it is written, es steht geschrieben.

what is the use of ? was nützt es ?

his crime was, sein Verbrechen bestand darin.

what is the charm ? worin besteht der Reiz ?

it was all to no purpose, es half alles nichts.

he was on his knees, er lag auf den Knien.

to be in the habit, gewohnt sein.

to be under the necessity, genötigt, gezwungen sein.

all eyes are upon him, aller Augen sind auf ihn gerichtet.

there is an end of everything, da hört alles auf.

26. Similarly the verb 'to have' will frequently have to be rendered by besitzen, behalten, erhalten, kriegen, müssen, sollen, lassen.

I had rather remain, ich möchte lieber bleiben.

Would you have me approve, würden Sie es gern sehen, wenn ich gut hieße ?

Had it not been for vexing my cousin, hätte ich nicht gefürchtet meinen Vetter zu beleidigen.

To have no hesitation, nicht anstehen.

To have a chat, plaudern.

27. Transitive and intransitive verbs are frequently rendered by reflexive verbs :—

To behave, sich benehmen, sich aufführen.

To retire, sich zurückziehen.

To cool, sich abkühlen.

To rejoice in, sich an etwas erfreuen.

To boast, sich rühmen.

28. The Passive Voice is far more frequently used in English than in German. The large number of English verbs which may be used either transitively or intransitively, the facility with which other parts of speech may be used as verbs, and others derived from them, together with the absence of all case-inflections, have contributed to make the Passive construction in English both concise and common. (Compare Meissner's *Introduction to French Prose Composition*, § 45 and §§ 60-65.)

In German the English Passive may be rendered in various ways.

(a) By the active with the indefinite pronoun man: *A tree is known by its fruit*, man kennt den Baum an den Früchten.

(b) By using a reflexive verb. This is most frequently done in conjunction with the auxiliary verb of mood lassen. *The truth cannot be long concealed*, die Wahrheit läßt sich nicht lange verbergen. *The rebels were joined by the peasantry*, das Landvolk schloß sich den Rebellen an.

(c) When the agent is expressed in English by a noun and preposition, turn the agent into a nominative and the verb into the active. *He was left a large estate by his father*, sein Vater hinterließ ihm ein großes Landgut. *Queen Elizabeth was succeeded by James the First*, Jakob der Erste folgte der Königin Elisabeth nach (war der Nachfolger . . .).

(d) An intransitive verb may be substituted for the passive. *The book was published last year*, das Buch erschien voriges Jahr.

(e) A substantive may take the place of the verb. *Ireland is a poor country as compared with England*, Irland ist ein armes Land im Vergleich mit England.

(f) By using the verb *lassen*. *That may be found, daß läßt sich finden.*

29. The English verbal form in -ing may be either the (participial) infinitive, an adjective or a participle. The participial infinitive is often called the gerund.

This form in -ing must be translated according to the function it performs in the English sentence.

30. The Gerund is generally rendered by the infinitive with *zu*. *There is no flying without wings, es ist nicht möglich ohne Flügel zu fliegen.*

Sometimes a subordinate sentence beginning with *daß* may be used. *He regrets not being able to come, es thut ihm leid, nicht kommen zu können, daß er nicht kommen kann.*

31. After the prepositions *anstatt* (statt), *um*, *ohne*, the infinitive with *zu* is used.

Grenoble opened to him its gates instead of taking him prisoner, Grenoble öffnete ihm seine Thore, anstatt ihn gefangen zu nehmen.

32. All other prepositions cannot be used directly with the infinitive, as in English. Whenever we have such a construction to render into German, we must put in the principal clause the preposition required in combination with the adverb *da* (before vowels *dar*), and place the infinitive with *zu* in apposition, when the subject of the dependent clause is the same. *I insist upon being heard, ich bestehe darauf, gehört zu werden.*

But if the subject of the dependent clause is a different one, a clause beginning with *daß* must be used. *He insisted*

upon his advocate being heard; er bestand darauf, daß sein Anwalt gehört würde.

33. When the verb in -ing takes the place of an adverbial clause, it must be in German expanded to a complete clause, and the proper conjunction suggested by the context used in introducing it.

Being often very hungry when he sat down to his meals, he contracted a habit of eating with ravenous greediness, da er oft sehr hungrig war, wenn er sich zum Essen hinsetzte, so eignete er sich eine Gewohnheit an, mit gesräßiger Gier zu essen.

While speaking with me, he turned pale as death, während er mit mir sprach, wurde er leichenblaf.

Our going thither is uncertain, ob wir dahin reifen, ist ungewif.

The Duke of York, on receiving the news, returned from Holland, als der Herzog von York diese Nachricht erhielt, lehrte er aus Holland zurück.

After hearing my story, and pausing some minutes, he took his leave, saying he would try what could be done, nachdem er meine Geschichte gehört und einige Augenblicke nachgedacht hatte, nahm er mit den Worten Abschied, er wolle sehen, was sich thun ließe.

34. Participles in apposition are frequently rendered by a relative clause.

The ground rising steeply from the seaboard, permitted no view into the interior of the country, das Terrain, welches steil von der Seeküste aufstieg, verstattete keinen Blick in das Innere des Landes.

35. The Participle Present, used in apposition, may be frequently rendered by the finite verb.

We began the search at once; Mr. Jorkins unlocking the drawers and desks, and we all taking out the papers, wir begannen die Nachsuchung sogleich; Herr Jorkins schloß die Schubladen und Kiste auf, und wir alle nahmen die Papiere heraus.

36. The Perfect Participle is used both as a predicate and as an attributive adjective. More freely than the present participle, it is used, with its adjuncts, as the equivalent of qualifying clauses. (See § 14.)

Die verlorene Schlacht. Die Schlacht ist verloren. Die Schlacht, verloren durch die Unentschlossenheit des Führers und die Mutlosigkeit der Truppen.

37. 'Will' is used in the sense of 'to be able,' or the simple present, and in the sense of 'being determined.'

Nothing that remains from the pen of Shaftesbury will bear a comparison with the political tracts of Halifax, nichts, was uns aus der Feder Shaftesburys erhalten ist, verträgt einen Vergleich (läßt sich vergleichen, kann verglichen werden) mit den politischen Aufsätzen des Halifax.

But go, in God's name, if you will, aber geh! in Gottes Namen, da du einmal gehen willst.

I will hear nothing light on such a subject, ich verbitte mir allen Scherz über diesen Gegenstand.

The same remarks will apply equally to the fine arts, dieselbe Bemerkung findet gleiche Anwendung auf die schönen Künste.

38. 'Would' (the imperfect) in the sense of 'to be in the habit of.'

Like most fat men, he would have his clothes made too tight,

and when dressed, would issue forth to take a drive in the Park, and then would come back in order to dine alone at the Piazza Coffee-House. Wie die meisten fetten Menschen ließ er seine Kleider stets zu enge machen, und wenn er angekleidet war, so ging er aus (hatte er die Gewohnheit das Haus zu verlassen) um im Park eine Spazierfahrt zu machen, und dann kam er zurück um allein im Piazza Kaffee-Hause zu speisen.

If a book was read to him before he went to bed, he would awake the next morning with his mind full of the thoughts and expressions which he had heard overnight; and he would write them down without in the least suspecting that they were not his own. Wenn ihm vor dem Schlafengehen ein Buch vorgelesen wurde, so erwachte er am nächsten Morgen, den Kopf voll von den Gedanken und Ausdrücken, die er am Abend vorher gehört, und schrieb sie nieder, ohne im geringsten zu argwöhnen, daß sie nicht seine eigenen waren.

OF ADVERBS

39. Adverbs and adverbial phrases are formed in so many different ways, and their value varies so much, from a most important circumstantial expression, a strong asseveration or negation to a mere expletive, that their idiomatic rendering is fraught with the greatest difficulties. In many instances, even the advanced student will do best not to attempt the rendering of mere expletives.

40. Many English verbs and verbal phrases are to be rendered in German by mere adverbs.

To be sure, gewiß; as it were, so zu sagen, gewissermaßen, gleichsam; you know, bekanntlich, doch, wohl, ja; I dare say,

wohl, vermutlich, hoffentlich, doch, wahrscheinlich, schon; *I am sure, sicherlich; I am not quite sure, schwerlich; I protest, wahrlich; I confess, freilich; I hope, hoffentlich; I fear, I am afraid, vielleicht; I happen to, zufällig.*

Some English verbs of mood may be rendered in German by adverbs.

As soon as can be, möglichst bald; you may be mistaken, Sie irren sich vielleicht; that cannot be, das ist ja unmöglich; I cannot help, notgedrungen, ich konnte nicht umhin, ich mußte; I happened to be, ich war zufällig.

41. Beginners have much trouble with *doch*, *noch* and *schon*.

Doch has a different force according as it has the accent or not.

Wenn es *doch* wahr wäre, would that it were true.

Wenn es *doch* wahr wäre, if it were true after all.

Thun Sie es *doch*, pray, do it.

Habe ich *doch* nie solchen Unsinn gehört, I am sure (verily) I never heard such nonsense.

Sei *doch* ruhig, be quiet, will you.

Noch. Er hat kaum noch einen Freund, he has scarcely a friend left.

Geben Sie uns noch eine Flasche, give us another bottle.

Schon. Schon längst, long ago.

Ich will es schon machen, I'll do it, never fear.

Sie ist ohne Zweifel schon tot, by this time she must be dead.

Ich könnte hier schon wohnen, I should not mind living here.

Darüber können wir schon lachen, we can afford to laugh at it,

OF PREPOSITIONS

42. The combination of two prepositions is frequent both in English and German. But the practice varies greatly.

When two prepositions are joined in English, German requires as a rule that one of these prepositions should be expressed by an adverb or by a substantive: *From among the crowd*, aus dem Haufen heraus. *From amidst his enemies*, aus der Mitte seiner Feinde. *From before sunrise till after sunset*, von der Zeit vor Sonnenaufgang bis nach Sonnenuntergang. *Within the house*, innerhalb des Hauses; but: *from within the house*, aus dem Innern des Hauses.

In German the combinations bis an, bis zu, von — an, von — auf, an, are of frequent occurrence.

From this time till the end of the war, von dieser Zeit an bis zum Ende des Krieges.

OF CONJUNCTIONS

43. Conjunctions stand as a rule at the beginning of the clause, both in English and in German. Conjunctional clauses, preceded by their subject, are, however, frequent in English, especially in contracted conjunctional clauses, consisting of the conjunction and the participle. In German the subject can also be placed before the conjunction, and many instances of this construction are found in the best writers. Nevertheless, there is something unusual, something schoolboy-like in this construction in German, and it is better to avoid it.

Lord North, though not very friendly to him, was not disposed to go to extremities with him, obgleich Lord North ihm nicht

sehr hold war, so war er doch nicht geneigt, es auf's äußerste mit ihm zu treiben.

His faults, when weighed against his merits and viewed in connection with his temptations, do not appear to us to deprive him of his right to an honourable place in the estimation of posterity. Wenn man seine Fehler gegen seine Verdienste wiegt und sie in Verbindung mit seinen Versuchungen betrachtet, so scheinen sie uns ihn seines Rechtes auf eine ehrenvolle Stelle im Urtheil der Nachwelt nicht zu berauben.

44. Many conjunctions, especially : when, while, till, after, if, as if, unless, though, however, whether, or, are used, in contracted clauses, with participles, adjectives, or substantives. When the verb to be supplied is the verb 'to be,' the clause must be completed in German, or an adverbial construction substituted. *When a boy, als er ein Knabe war, in seiner Knabenzeit; when young, als er noch jung war, in seiner Jugend.*

Though a Whig, or perhaps, because a Whig, the Marquis was one of the haughtiest of men, obgleich er ein Whig war, oder vielleicht, weil er ein Whig war, war der Marquis einer der stolzesten Menschen (zeigte sich, benahm sich der M. als einer . . .).

45. BUT is used as a preposition, a conjunction, and as an adverb.

As a preposition : *All but one, alle außer einem, alle bis auf einen; the last but one, der vorletzte; nothing but, nichts als, nichts außer.*

As a conjunction : *Nobody but has his faults; es ist niemand, der nicht seine Fehler hat. (There is) nobody but*

knows, es ist keiner, der es nicht wüßte. I hardly went out but I met him, ich ging selten aus, daß ich ihn nicht traf, ohne ihn zu treffen. Who knows, but it may come true, wer weiß, ob es nicht wahr wird. I cannot but admire him, ich kann nicht umhin, ihn zu bewundern.

As an adverb: *There is but one God, es ist nur ein Gott. He is but eighteen years old, er ist erst achtzehn Jahre alt.*

46. *If, wenn,* is followed by the indicative mood of the present, perfect, or future tense, and by the subjunctive, when the verb is in the perfect or pluperfect tense.

If he is guilty, he will be punished, wenn er schuldig ist, wird er bestraft werden.

If he were guilty, he would be punished, wenn er schuldig wäre, würde er bestraft werden.

Clauses with *if* are frequently contracted, by dropping the conjunction and inverting the order of subject and verb.

If the invaders had acted with vigour and judgment, Cadiz would probably have fallen. Wären die Angreifer mit Kraft und Einsicht verfahren, so würde Cadix wahrscheinlich gefallen sein.

If possible, wo möglich.

47. *That.* Clauses beginning with *that* are contracted in English simply by dropping the conjunction:

I wished that I had seen him; I wished I had seen him. But in German, if the conjunction *daß* is omitted, the words must be arranged in the same order as in a principal sentence, the verb being in the subjunctive (*Public School Grammar, Lesson 67*). This construction is very frequent after the verbs *sagen, erzählen, bitten, verlangen, hoffen,*

fürchten, and the like, and after substantives expressing corresponding ideas. This is commonly called *oratio obliqua*. *The boy maintained (that) he had delivered the letter*, der Knabe behauptete, daß er den Brief abgeliefert hätte, or er hätte den Brief abgeliefert, or den Brief abgeliefert zu haben.

48. Many difficulties which present themselves in translating from English into German never or rarely present themselves in original composition. Many a clumsy sentence may be simplified by removing self-evident or unnecessary qualifications, or by constituting indispensable qualifications into independent sentences.

PART I

INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES

The figures in brackets in the text [] refer to the paragraphs of the Introduction.

P. Sch. G. Gr. refers to Meissner's *Public School German Grammar*.

[1-5]

I

A MORNING WALK

Principal Sentences

I woke early one morning. It was last week. It was six o'clock. I got up at once. I dressed myself. The sun was up. It was hidden by clouds. The morning was not very bright. I walked into the garden. The grass was still wet. The bushes¹ were still wet. The dew lay upon them.² I saw a bird. The bird lay on the ground. It³ could not fly. It was wounded. Some one had hit it with a stone. I picked the bird up. I brought it into the house. I put it into a cage. I fed it. I tended it. It got well. I released it. It flew away.

¹ Use either the plural or a collective in the singular. Introd. § 7.

² Use either a compound with *da*, or the pron. *derselbe*. ³ Mind the gender.

[1-5]

II

Principal Sentences and Dependent Clauses

I awoke at six o'clock one day last week, and at once got up and dressed myself. The morning was not very light; for, though the sun was up [41], it was [41] hidden by clouds. As I walked out into the garden, where the grass and bushes were still wet with the dew that lay upon them, I saw a bird lying on the ground. It could not fly, because some one had wounded it with a stone. I picked the bird up and brought it into the house, put it into a cage, and fed and tended it until it got well, when I released it, and it flew away.

W. D. WHITNEY.

[1-5]

III

THE PLEASURES OF A POOR MAN

Principal Sentences

Our pleasures are not expensive, but they are quite wonderful. We are at home in the evening; we shut the door; we draw the curtains. My wife made those curtains. We are then very snug. It is fine weather; we go for¹ a walk in the evening; the streets are full of enjoyment for us. We look into the glittering windows of the jewellers' shops. I show Sophy the jewels and gold watches, and she shows me the silver spoons and forks. We shall buy them some day. We have no money now. We are poor. Some day we shall be rich. We stroll into the great streets; and see a house to let. We look at it. I shall be a judge some day. That house would do for² a judge. We go home; we buy a little lobster at the fishmonger's, we take it home and make a splendid supper.

¹ Leave out *for* and use the simple infinitive. To go for a walk, einen Spaziergang machen, spazieren gehen. ² do for, sich passen.

[1-5]

IV

Principal Sentences and Dependent Clauses

Our pleasures are inexpensive, but they are quite wonderful! When we are at home here of an¹ evening, and shut the door and draw those curtains—which she made—where could we be more snug? When it's fine, and we go out for a walk in the evening, the streets abound in enjoyment for us. We look into the glittering windows of the jewellers' shops, and I show Sophy the jewels and the gold watches, and she shows me the spoons and forks which she would buy for me, if she could afford it. Then we stroll into the great streets and see a house to let. Sometimes we look up at it, and say, how would that do, if I was made a judge? In walking home [33], we buy a little lobster at the fishmonger's and bring it here and make a splendid supper, chatting [33 or 35] about what we have seen. CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ Use the def. article and the genitive.

[1-5]

V

THE FAIRY

Principal Sentences

Ariosto tells a pretty story. It is the story of a fairy. She was compelled to appear in the form of a foul and poisonous snake. A mysterious law compelled her to appear in this form at certain seasons. Some persons injured her¹ during the period of her enchantment. She excluded these for ever from her blessings. The snake became again a beautiful fairy. Many people had pitied and protected her. She granted them all their wishes. She filled their houses with wealth. She made them happy in love and victorious

in war. Liberty² is such a spirit. She takes³ sometimes the form of a hateful reptile. She grovels, she hisses, she stings. Do not crush her! Receive her in her degraded shape. She will reward you in the time of her beauty and glory.

¹ to injure, jemandem ein Leid antun, beleidigen.
article; compare P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 54.

² Use the def.
³ takes — on,
nimmt — an.

[1-5]

VI

Principal Sentences and Dependent Clauses

Ariosto tells a pretty story of a fairy, who, by some mysterious law of her nature, was condemned to appear at certain seasons in the form of a foul snake. Those who injured her during the period of her disguise, were for ever excluded from participation in the blessings which she bestowed. But to those who, in spite of her loathsome aspect, pitied and protected her, she afterwards revealed herself in the beautiful and celestial form which was natural to her, accompanied their steps, granted all their wishes, filled their houses with wealth, made them happy in love and victorious in war. Such a spirit is liberty. But woe to those who in disgust shall venture [21] to crush her! And happy are those who, having dared [33 or 34] to receive her in her degraded and frightful shape, shall at length be rewarded by her in the time of her beauty and her glory.

MACAULAY.

[1-5]

VII

THE TOY-SHOP

Caleb and his daughter were at work together in their usual working-room,¹ which served them for their ordinary

living-room as well ; and a strange place it was. There were houses in it, finished and unfinished, for dolls in all stations in life. Suburban tenements¹ for dolls of moderate means ; kitchens and single apartments for dolls of the lower classes ; capital town residences¹ for dolls of high estate.² Some of these establishments were already furnished with a view³ to the convenience of dolls of limited incomes ; others could be fitted on the most expensive scale at a moment's notice, from⁴ whole shelves of chairs and tables, sofas, bedsteads and upholstery. The nobility and gentry, and public in general, for whose accommodation these tenements were designed, lay, here and there, in baskets, staring [35] straight up at the ceiling.

CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ Use a compound. ² of high estate, von hohem Stande, aus den höheren Ständen. ³ with a view, mit Rücksicht auf ; je nach den Verhältnissen. ⁴ from (the stock which), aus dem Vorrat an . . . welcher . . .

[6]

VIII

1. I landed in London on a wintry autumn evening. 2. A great liberty of speaking and writing was allowed. 3. The child was early sent to the village school, where he learned his letters on the same bench with the sons of the peasantry. 4. The hired horse which I rode was to be put up that night at an inn by the way. 5. Of the rural life of England he knew nothing. 6. Her favourite books were French novels. 7. Wilhelmina had been Frederic's favourite sister ; he felt her death as much as it was in his iron nature to feel the loss of anything. 8. When we arrived before day at the inn where the mail stopped, I was shown up to a nice little bedroom. 9. A medical man, being so much in families, ought to have neither eyes nor ears for anything but his profession. 10. She had a little room in the garret. 11. I found it rather harassing to live in this¹ state of siege, but was too much afraid [25] of Mr. Crupp to see any way out

of it.² 12. Hospitality is one of the first Christian duties. The beast returns to his shelter, and the bird flies to his nest; but helpless man can only find refuge with³ his fellow-creatures. 13. His plans were castles in the air. 14. Prussia is the youngest of the great European states.

¹ in this = in such a.

² a way out of, ein Ausweg.

³ bei.

[7-9]

IX

1. The curtain at length fell amidst thunders of unanimous applause. 2. The profits were very small. 3. Superstitions of this nature gradually lose their hold upon the minds of the people. 4. The good looks and the gallant bearing of the boy won the grandsire's heart for him. 5. His own means, whether large or small [44], were at least fully adequate to his expenses. 6. The mariners who were driven by accident into this solitary bay pretended that the ruin of the church was occasionally observed [28] to be full of lights, and, from this circumstance, were used to prophesy shipwrecks and deaths at sea. 7. In the extremity of his distress he implored the publisher who had been enriched by the sale of his works, to lend him twenty pounds. 8. Present fears are less terrible than horrible imaginings. 9. Magnus remained a minute in silence, gazing [33 or 35] upon his kinswoman. 10. The highest honours of the state were now within Temple's reach.¹ 11. Then came² a dispute, such as frequently arises even between honourable men, when they make important agreements by mere verbal communication.³ 12. England and France had bound themselves by treaty to maintain the Pragmatic Sanction. 13. England, Russia, Poland, and Holland declared in form their intention to adhere to their engagements.

¹ within reach, erreichbar.

² came, folgte.

³ Use an adverb.

[10-16]

X

1. The evils produced¹ by a bad government and a bad religion seemed to have attained their greatest height during the last years of the seventeenth century. 2. Johnson's visit to the Hebrides introduced him to a state of society completely new to him. 3. The number of copies daily distributed was² [25] at first three thousand. 4. The fishermen of each district assemble at particular stations with their boats and crews, and erect upon the shore small huts, composed of shingle, and covered with turf, for their temporary lodging. 5. A situation so important, lucrative, and splendid, was naturally an object of ambition to the ablest and most powerful natives. 6. An Irishman more than seven feet high, who was picked up in London by the Prussian ambassador, received a bounty of near thirteen hundred pounds sterling, very much more than the ambassador's salary. 7. An experience of four years was insufficient [25]³ to dispel the illusion. 8. The rival, the enemy, so long envied, so implacably persecuted, had been dismissed unhurt. 9. The finances of his government were in an embarrassed state, and this embarrassment he was determined to relieve by some means, fair or foul. 10. A political change, silent and gradual, but of the highest importance, was in daily progress [25]⁴.

¹ Turn best into a relative clause with active verb. ² was, betrug,
 belief sich auf. ³ to be sufficient, genügen. ⁴ was in progress,
 entwickelte sich.

[10-16]

XI

1. Perhaps,¹ like most persons who have paid much attention to departments of knowledge [6] which lie out of the common track, he was inclined to overrate the value of his favourite studies [6]. 2. The numerous fictions, generally original, often wild and grotesque, but always singularly

graceful and happy, which are found in his essays, fully entitle Addison to the rank of a great poet, a rank to which his metrical compositions give him no claim. 3. On the 16th of August the fleet arrived before Barcelona, and Peterborough found that the task assigned² to him by the archduke and the prince was one³ of almost insuperable difficulty. 4. The pleasures, so long untasted, of liberty, of friendship, of domestic affection, were almost too acute for her shattered frame. Conversation, the most brilliant and polished, revived her spirits. 5. With a heart deeply corrupted by vice, a head long accustomed only to think of trifles, an impaired constitution, an impaired fortune. and, worst of all, a very red nose, he was entering on a dull, frivolous, and unrespected old age [6]. 6. We fear that the volumes before us [14, 44] will not much attract the reader. 7. He drew up his troops according to the methods prescribed by the best writers. 8. On the day before his death she long remained in tears on the stairs leading to his bedroom.

¹ Construe: perhaps was he inclined . . . ² May be placed before the subst., but better in a relative clause with the verb either in the Active or Passive. ³ Either leave out 'one,' or say 'a task.'

[17]

XII

1. Of all the powers that had taken part in this war, the only gainer¹ was Frederic. 2. France and Austria, long accustomed to rise from the game of war losers,² would, for the first time, both be gainers. 3. When a plunge is to be made [28] into the water, it's of no use [25] lingering on the bank. 4. We have been told that the publishers gave her two thousand pounds, and we have no doubt [26] that they might have given her a still larger sum without being losers. 5. Revenge may be wicked, but it's natural. 6. By

poetry we do not mean all writing³ in verse, nor even all good writing in verse. 7. We departed to the regret⁴ of all concerned. 8. Whether the whole proceeding was not illegal, is a question. 9. When Minna heard a tale of woe or injustice, it was then her blood rushed to her cheeks. 10. If a man has sold beer of a Sunday morning, it is no defence⁵ that he has saved the life of a fellow-creature at the risk of his own. If he has harnessed a Newfoundland dog to his child's carriage, it is no defence that he was wounded at Waterloo.

¹ Use a verb and a relative clause.

² im Kriegsspiel zu verlieren.

³ all writing = all that is written.

⁴ to the regret = regretted by.

⁵ Say: he cannot defend himself with this.

[18-20]

XIII

1. The specimen which Mr. Courtenay has preserved of these early compositions is by no means contemptible. 2. These men were irreclaimable. They were as untamable as the wild ass. 3. His resolution was inflexible. 4. When the day broke, it blew harder and harder. As we struggled on, nearer and nearer to the sea, from which this mighty wind was blowing, its force became more and more terrific. 5. Neither climate nor poverty, neither study nor the sorrows of a home-sick exile, could tame the desperate audacity of his spirit. 6. As the taste for¹ books becomes more and more common, the patronage of individuals becomes less and less necessary. 7. From the time [42] of Pope to² the present day readers have been constantly becoming more and more numerous, and the writers, consequently, more and more independent. 8. The loss of fortune to me alone would have been trifling. 9. It was very pleasant to see the doctor with his pretty young wife. 10. Very cold I was, [25] I know, notwithstanding the hot tea they had given me before a

large fire downstairs. 11. He looked almost like a man inspired.³

¹ the taste for books, der Geschmack an Büchern. ² from — to,
von — an . . . bis auf. ³ Leave out *man*, and use the past part.
substantively.

[1-20]

XIV

THE DECAY OF SPAIN

A new scene was about to open [27]. It had already been for some time apparent to discerning observers, that England and Holland were threatened by a common danger, much more formidable than any which they had reason to apprehend from each other. The old enemy of their independence and of their religion was no longer to be dreaded. The sceptre had passed away from Spain. Men looked to Spain and saw only weakness disguised and increased by pride, dominions of vast bulk and little strength, tempting, unwieldy, and defenceless, an empty treasury, a sullen and torpid nation, a child on the throne, factions in the council, ministers who served only themselves,¹ and soldiers who were terrible only to their countrymen. Men looked to France, and saw a large and compact territory, a rich soil, a central situation, a bold, alert, and ingenious people, large revenues, numerous and well-disciplined troops, an active and ambitious prince, in the flower of his age, surrounded by generals of unrivalled skill.

MACAULAY.

¹ who served only themselves ; translate either literally or by selbst-süchtig.

[21-24]

XV

1. Of all generals Frederic understood best how to repair defeat, and Daun understood least how to improve victory.
2. The wise men of antiquity loved to convey instruction

under the covering of apologue.¹ 3. I know better. 4. I am tempted to think that² to be despised by her sex is a very great compliment to³ a woman. 5. When we are delivered from great and serious dangers, our mood is, or ought to be, grave, in proportion to⁴ the peril we have escaped. 6. There were three or four of us. 7. Perhaps it was the happiest time of both their lives. 8. My father had once been a favourite of hers, I believe. 9. You are not to stand so, with your hands in your pockets. 10. She laughed in his face. 11. The king's feeling about his troops seems to have resembled a miser's feeling. He loved to collect them, to count them. 12. Make what alterations you please. 13. An editor exercises his talent in finding out difficulties in what is perfectly plain. 14. The best I can wish you is that you may come to be ashamed of what you have done to-day. 15. He had a taste for what is called low life. 16. Temple gives us a catalogue of those whom he regards as the greatest writers of later times.

¹ under the covering of apologue, in dem Gewande der Fabel.

² Construe: that it is a great compliment. ³ to, für. ⁴ in proportion to, je nach, im Verhältniß zu.

[25-26]

XVI

1. In Italy, in Germany, and in the Netherlands, great means were at the disposal¹ of great generals. 2. What is the charm, the irresistible charm of Walpole's writings? It consists in the art of amusing without exciting. 3. The blaze of the ships burning in the river was seen at London; it was rumoured that a foreign army had landed at Gravesend. 4. In truth, he was not so far behind our generation as he was before his own. 5. What is the use of being in Parliament, if you must pay your debts? 6. I am² alone in the world, said the friendless girl, I have nothing to look for³ but [45] what my own labour can bring me. 7. The theory

of the English constitution. according to many high authorities, was that three independent powers, the sovereign, the nobility, and the commons, ought constantly to act as checks on each other. 8. The public men of the times which followed the Restoration were by no means deficient in courage or ability. 9. The plot of the play is equally destitute of interest and probability. 10. At a short distance from the mansion, and near to the sea-shore, there were a few most wretched cottages for the inhabitants and tenants. 11. What Peterborough was to ⁴ Bolingbroke as a writer, he was to Marlborough as a general. 12. On the side of the imperial family was the queen, herself a princess of that family.⁵

¹ to be at the disposal, zu Gebote stehen.

² I am, ich stehe.

³ nothing to look for, nichts zu erwarten.

⁴ to be to, sich zu jemandem verhalten wie.

⁵ a relative clause.

[26-27]

XVII

1. Have you had a new coat made? 2. Boileau had undoubtedly some of the qualities of a great critic. 3. We had a long chat by the fire before we went to bed. 4. He had every disposition to quarrel with his new allies. 5. Had we not better stay at home? 6. He had German enough to scold his soldiers or to give the word of command to his grenadiers. 7. Whilst the Castilians were everywhere arming in the cause of Philip, the Allies were serving that cause as effectually by their mismanagement. 8. The mob left the palace and proceeded ¹ to pull down the houses of the ministers. 9. Charles of Lorraine retired to hide his shame and his sorrow at Brussels. 10. Swift boasted that he was never known to steal a hint ²; and he certainly owed as little to his predecessors as any modern writer. 11. This eccentric friendship was fast cooling. 12. Remember how you behaved to me. 13. The archduke embarked with a large train of attendants.

14. Very often, when his day's work was done, we went out together to fly ³ the great kite.

¹ proceeded, machte sich daran. ² daß man ihm nie das Plagiat eines Zuges (einer Stelle) nachgewiesen habe. ³ to fly, steigen zu lassen.

[28]

XVIII

1. The great landlords were permitted to exercise a certain jurisdiction within their domain. 2. In some districts no labourers, except women, were seen in the fields at harvest-time. 3. Here and there some lamps were seen to twinkle in the distance. 4. At his table nothing was heard but French conversation. 5. She seems to have been regarded by him rather with fear than with love. 6. Whether I shall turn out¹ the hero of my own life, or whether that station will be held by anybody else, these pages² must show. 7. No great battle was gained by the enemy. 8. It may easily be supposed that Clive was most cordially welcomed home by his family. 9. It was April; and in April, a hundred years ago, the London season was thought³ to be far advanced. 10. No part of the public income was more certain than that which was derived from⁴ the lotteries. 11. He was apprenticed to a celebrated musician in London. 12. The gates were thronged.⁵

¹ whether I shall turn out, ob ich — erscheinen werde, ob ich mich als — beweisen werde. ² these pages, dieses Buch (§ 7), diese Blätter. ³ was thought, galt. ⁴ derived from=which flowed out of. ⁵ people thronged, man (das Volk) drängte sich.

[29-36]

XIX

1. A patient is seldom pleased with that sort of consolation which is founded on holding light the malady of¹ which he complains. 2. The fishermen's wives looked their last² after the parting sails, and were now departing slowly, with down-

cast and anxious looks, towards the huts in which they were to make arrangements for preparing and drying the fish, with which they hoped to see their husbands and friends return deeply laden. 3. The unfortunate prince, after travelling eight days on bad roads, under a burning sun, and sleeping eight nights in miserable hovels, reached at last the capital. 4. A man who, having left England when a boy, returns to it after thirty or forty years passed in India, will find, be his talents what they may, that he has much both to learn and to unlearn before he can take his place among English statesmen. 5. Moses sat reading, while I taught the little ones. 6. He was sent from school to school,³ making very little progress, and gaining for himself everywhere the character of an exceedingly naughty boy. 7. My father talks of my travelling soon. 8. In things occurring in common life, as God has bestowed reason upon us, we cannot be wrong in employing it. 9. The Austrian captains already began to talk of completing the work of Marlborough and Eugene, and of compelling France to relinquish Alsace and the three bishoprics. 10. A man who has seen neither moon nor sun cannot be blamed [28] for talking of the unrivalled beauty of the morning star. 11. Farming, gardening, county business, and studies rather entertaining than profound, occupied his time. 12. Don't you remember your coming⁴ to the coach to meet us, and my having breakfast here, and our riding out to Blunderstone together?

¹ über. ² to look one's last, einen letzten Blick werfen. ³ from
school to school, aus einer Schule in die andere. ⁴ wie Sie — kamen.

[29-36]

XX

A CAUTIOUS PIRATE

While Mordaunt was engaged in writing to Magnus Troil a letter, setting forth¹ the circumstances in² which Captain

Cleveland had been thrown upon their coast, the captain,³ having first selected and laid aside some wearing apparel and necessaries enough to fill a knapsack, took in hand hammer and nails, employed himself in securing the lid of his sea-chest, by fastening it down in a workman-like manner, and then added the corroborating security⁴ of a cord, twisted and knotted with nautical dexterity.⁵ 'I leave this in your charge,' he said, 'all except this,' showing the bag of gold; 'and these,' pointing to a cutlass and pistols, 'which may prevent all further risk of my parting company with my gold coin.'

'You will find no occasion for⁶ weapons in this country, Captain Cleveland,' replied Mordaunt; 'a child might travel with a purse of gold from Sumburgh Head to the Scaw of Unst, and no soul would injure him.'

'And that's'⁷ pretty boldly said, young gentleman, considering what is going on without doors at this moment.'

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

¹ in which he set forth, worin er — auseinandersetzte.

² in, unter.

³ Construe: took the captain.

⁴ befestigte sie noch mit.

⁵ which

he twisted, etc.

⁶ find no occasion for, nicht brauchen.

⁷ that is,

das heißt, das nenne ich.

⁸ without doors, draußen.

[37-38]

XXI

DR. JOHNSON'S ODDITIES

Eccentricities less strange than his have often been thought grounds sufficient for absolving felons, and for setting aside wills. His grimaces, his gestures, his mutterings, sometimes diverted and sometimes terrified people who did not know him. At a dinner-table he would, in a fit of absence, stoop down and twitch off a lady's shoe. He would amaze a drawing-room by suddenly ejaculating a clause from the

Lord's Prayer.¹ He would conceive an unintelligible aversion to a particular alley, and perform a great circuit² rather than see the hateful place. He would set his heart on³ touching every post in the streets through which he walked. If by any chance he missed a post, he would go back a hundred yards and repair the omission. At one time he would stand poring on the town clock without being able to tell the hour. At another, he would distinctly hear his mother, who was many miles off, calling him by his name. But this was not [41] the worst. MACAULAY.

¹ a clause from the Lord's Prayer, eine Bitte aus dem Vaterunser.
² to perform a great circuit, einen großen Umweg machen. ³ he set his heart on, er setzte seinen Kopf darauf.

[39-41]

XXII

1. I dare say he will come. 2. She is very clever, is she not? 3. I could not help¹ smiling at their vanity. 4. You have never been at school, have you? 5. I dare say she'll recover it. 6. He is a lucky fellow, that he is. 7. We happened not to have chairs enough for the whole company. 8. We must add that this edition, though eminently beautiful, is in some important points defective. 9. Wild and fanciful as she is, I expected not this. 10. Nonsense, how could I see any one, when light and distance only enabled me to know that it was a boat?—But there must have been some one in the boat. 11. It may seem strange that such an apparition should, in time, have glided from my mind, like a vision of the night—but so it was. 12. This is strange. 13. He lived twenty-eight years longer, without adding to the high literary reputation which he had attained. 14. Such was Frederic, the ruler. But there was another Frederic, the fiddler, the flute-player, the poetaster. 15. She returned in time to receive the last blessing of her father. 16. We

walked about the churchyard for an hour after all was over. 17. It seems to me at this hour, that I have never seen such sunlight as on those bright April afternoons. 18. But this was not the worst. 19. Charles VI. left no son, and had, long before his death, relinquished all hope of male issue. 20. Before the Restoration many signs indicated that a period of license was at hand. 21. De Witt, who from report had formed a high opinion of Temple, was pleased by² the compliment.

¹ I could not help, ich mußte.

² was pleased by, freute sich über.

[45]

XXIII

1. The colonies of¹ adventurers were supported by constant reinforcements from beyond the sea.² 2. In Ireland to this day the villain who shoots at an enemy from behind a hedge is too often protected from justice by public sympathy. 3. He followed this occupation till within a few weeks of his death. 4. All the domestics who were attached to him were removed from under his roof. 5. The garden was valued at above five hundred pounds. 6. From that time till the end of the war, Frederic treated Saxony as a part of his dominions. 7. The Prussian discipline was rigorous even to cruelty. 8. Steele had known Addison from childhood. 9. From that time the excitement went down.³ 10. It was impossible to conceal his preparations, for throughout the Prussian dominions regiments, guns, and baggage were in motion. 11. From his boyhood he had been a frequent inmate of the residence of Magnus. 12. At length the archduke advanced into Castile, and ordered Peterborough to join him. 13. Enemies from within and from without attacked the empire.

¹ of, von.

² beyond the sea, überseeisch.

³ to go down, sich legen.

[43-46]

XXIV

1. Though not a brilliant orator, he was a good man of business [6]. 2. France, not yet declaring¹ herself a principal in the war, took part in it as an ally of Bavaria. 3. Goldsmith crying,² because the Good-natured Man had failed, inspired Johnson with no pity. 4. Swift, whether as a man or a writer, [44] occupies a foremost place in the literary and political history of the time. 5. Though his opinions were democratic, his tastes and his associations were such as harmonise best with monarchy and aristocracy. 6. The plain bluntness of his manner, if remote from courtesy, appeared at least as widely different from deceit. 7. When in company with others, she was sullenly silent.³ 8. His conduct is anything but satisfactory. 9. I could tell you something, but that I am afraid. 10. Out of a thousand we had but a hundred remaining. 11. It is, if possible, a still more humiliating fact that Voltaire indemnified himself in pocketing the wax-candles in the royal ante-chambers. 12. At six weeks old, he received from his godfather a silver cup; at six months old, a coral with a gold whistle and bells. 13. Swift, but for the unconquerable prejudice of the queen, would have been a bishop.

¹ declared — but. ² that G. shed tears.
silent, verharrte sie in einem mürrischen Schweigen.

³ she was sullenly

PART II

GRADUATED SELECTED PASSAGES

The figures in brackets [] in the text refer to the paragraph of the Introduction.

P. Sch. G. Gr. refers to Meissner's Public School German Grammar.

XXV

(1)

A VOYAGE

Conversation of a Father with his Son

I suppose [40, 41] you¹ consider yourself quite a good sailor by now [41] ?

Oh yes, I have never been ill yet, though it has been quite rough again and again.²

What you call rough, little man ?³ But as you are grown such a very good sailor, and also as the sea is all but [45] smooth, I think we will have a sail⁴ in the yacht to-day, and that a tolerably long one.

Oh, how delightful ! But I thought we were going home ; and the things are all packed up.

And why should we not go homewards in the yacht, things and all ?

What, all the way⁵ to England ?

No, not so far as that ; but these kind people, when ⁶ they came into the harbour last night, offered to take us up the coast to a town, where we will sleep and start comfortably home to-morrow morning.⁷ So now you will have a chance of seeing something of the great sea outside, and of seeing, perhaps, the whale himself.

I hope we shall see the whale ; the men say he has been [25] outside the harbour every day this week after the fish.

Very good. Now, take a last look at this pretty place, and all its dear kind people.

And the dear kind dogs too, and the cat and the kittens.

¹ In this conversation of a father with his son, translate the second person plural by the second person singular in German. ² again and again, *wiederholt, mehrmals*. ³ Say : my little man. ⁴ to have a sail, *eine Segelfahrt machen*. ⁵ all the way, *die ganze Fahrt*. ⁶ Construe : when these good people ; § 43. ⁷ to-morrow morning, *morgen früh*.

XXVI

(2)

So here is my little man on deck, after a good night's rest. And he has not been the least sick, I hear.

Not a bit.¹ But the cabin was so stuffy and hot, I asked leave to come on deck. What a huge steamer ! But I do not like it as well as the yacht. It smells of oil and steam, and——

And pigs and bullocks too, I am sorry to say [21]. Don't you go forward, but stay here with me, and look round.

Where are we now ? What are those high hills, far away to the left, above the lowlands and woods ?

Those are the shore of the Old World—the Welsh Mountains.

And in front of us I can see nothing but flat land. Where is that ?

That is the mouth of the Severn and Avon, where we shall be in half an hour more.

And there, on the right, over the low hills, I can see higher ones, blue and hazy.²

Those are the Mendip Hills. We are steaming³ along between the Mendips and the Welsh Mountains.

¹ not a bit, ganz und gar nicht, nicht im geringsten. ² they are blue.

³ to steam, dampfen is used, but mit dem Dampf[schiffe] fahren, or simply fahren, would be better.

XXVII

(3)

Oh! where have we got to now¹? Where is the wide Severn sea?

Two or three miles beyond us; and here we are in the narrow little Avon.

Narrow indeed. I wonder that the steamer does not run against those rocks. But how beautiful they are, and how the trees hang down over the water, and are all reflected in it [27].

Yes. The gorge of the Avon is always lovely. I saw it first when I was [41] a little boy like you; and I have seen it many times since, in sunshine and in storm, and thought it more lovely every time. Look! there is something curious.

What, those great rusty rings fixed into the rock?

Yes. Those may be [40] as old, for aught I know, as Queen Elizabeth's or James's reign.

But why were they put² there?

For ships to hold on by, if they lost the tide.³

What do you mean?

It is high tide now. That is why the water is almost up to the branches of the trees. But when the tide turns, it

will all rush out in a torrent which would sweep ships out to sea again, if they had no steam, as we have, to help them up against the stream. So⁵ sailing-ships, in old times, fastened themselves to those rings, and rode⁶ against the stream till the tide turned,⁷ and carried them up to Bristol.

CHARLES KINGSLEY.

¹ to get to, hinfommen. ² put, angebracht. ³ to lose the tide, zu spät für die Flut kommen. ⁴ when the tide turns, zur Zeit der Ebbe, wenn die Ebbe eintritt. ⁵ so, und deshalb. ⁶ to ride, (vor Anker) liegen. ⁷ till the tide turned, bis die Flut eintrat, bis zur Zeit der Flut.

XXVIII

A PLEASANT HOST

(1)

Mrs. Handycock was a little meagre woman, who did not speak very good English, and who appeared to me to employ the major part of her time in bawling out from the top of the stairs¹ to the servants below. I never saw her either read a book or occupy herself with needlework, during the whole time I was in the house.² She had a large grey parrot, and I really cannot tell which screamed the worst of the two—but she was very civil and kind to me.³ Before I had been [41] there ten minutes she told me that she adored sailors, that they were defenders and preservers of their king and country, and that Mr. Handycock would be home by four o'clock, and then we should go to dinner.

As I was very anxious to see Mr. Handycock, and very anxious to have⁴ my dinner, I was not sorry to hear the clock on the stairs strike four.

Rap, tap, tap! 'There is your⁵ master, Jemima,' screamed the lady. 'Run down, my dear, and let Mr. Handycock in; he will be so surprised at seeing you open the door.'

I ran down as Mrs. Handycock desired me,⁶ and opened the

street door. 'Who —— are you ?' cried Mr. Handycrack in a gruff voice.

'Law,⁷ Mr. Handycrack,' said his wife, from the top of the stairs, 'how can you be so cross ! I told him to open the door to surprise you.'

¹ from the top of the stairs, oben von der Treppe herab. ² Begin the sentence with the time-clause. ³ but to me, aber gegen mich war sie.

⁴ to have, zu kriegen. ⁵ spoken to the servant, use the 2nd pers. sing.

⁶ dem Wunsche der Frau G. gemäß. ⁷ Law, herries (accent on the last syllable).

XXIX

(2)

'Are you¹ ready for your dinner, my dear ?' said the lady, almost trembling.

'If the dinner is ready for me. I believe we usually dine at four,' answered her husband gruffly.

'Pray, madam,' inquired I, as soon as he was out of hearing,² 'what is the matter with³ Mr. Handycrack, that he is so cross to you ?' My father had told me that Mr. Handycrack was his stockbroker, and would do all he could to make me comfortable.

'Never mind,⁴ my dear,' whispered Mrs. Handycrack to me, 'it's only because there's something wrong on 'Change. Mr. Handycrack is a bear⁵ just now.'

I thought so too, but I made no answer, for Mr. Handycrack came upstairs.

Dinner put an end⁶ to the silence which followed this remark. Mr. Handycrack walked downstairs, leaving his wife and me to follow at our leisure.

¹ you, the wife addresses her husband ; use du. ² was out of hearing, außer Hörbereich war, es nicht hören konnte. ³ what is the matter with, was steht with the dative.

⁴ never mind, lassen Sie es gut sein, lassen Sie ihn nur reden. ⁵ to be a bear, the play on the word is untranslatable, ein Bär sein, wie man zu sagen pflegt, d. h., auf die Baiste spekulieren. ⁶ to put an end to, ein Ende machen.

XXX

(3)

‘Are you¹ people coming down to dinner?’ roared Mr. Handycrack from below.² ‘Yes, my dear,’ replied the lady, ‘I thought you were washing your hands.’ We descended into the dining-room, where we found that Mr. Handycrack had already devoured two of the whittings, leaving only one on the dish for his wife and me. ‘Would you like a little bit of whiting, my dear?’ said the lady to me. ‘It’s not worth halving,’ observed the gentleman, in a surly tone, taking up [35] the fish with his own knife and fork, and putting [35] it on his plate.

‘Well, I’m so glad you like them,³ my dear,’ replied the lady meekly; then turning [35] to me: ‘There’s some nice roast-veal coming, my dear.’

The veal made its appearance, and fortunately for us, Mr. Handycrack could not devour it all. He took the lion’s share [6], nevertheless, cutting off [33 or 35] all the brown, and then shoving the dish over to his wife to help herself⁴ and me.

After dinner, Mr. Handycrack went down to the cellar for⁵ a bottle of wine. ‘O deary me!’⁶ exclaimed his wife, ‘he must have lost a mint of money⁷—we had better⁸ go upstairs and leave him alone; he’ll be better after a bottle of port, perhaps.’ I was very glad to go away, and being [33] very tired, I went to bed without any tea, for Mrs. Handycrack dared not venture to make it before her husband came upstairs.

CAPTAIN MARRYAT.

¹ The second person plural.

² from below, von unten herauf.

³ I like it, es schmeckt mir gut.

⁴ to help herself, sich zu bedienen.

⁵ for, um — zu holen.

⁶ O dear me, O du meine Güte.

⁷ a mint

of money, eine Masse Geld, ein Haufen Geld.

⁸ we had better, wir

thäten am besten.

XXXI

THE SHAPE OF THE EARTH

When one stands in the middle of a broad flat country, or looks out upon the wide sea, it seems as if this world, whereon we live and move, were a great plain, to the edge of which one would come if one went far enough onward. This is the first notion we have as children. It was also the firm belief of mankind in early¹ times. The sun and moon were once thought [28] to rise and set only for the use of the human race; and the sky, with all its stars, was looked upon as a great crystal dome covering [35] and resting [35] upon the earth.

But we can easily prove to ourselves that the eye is deceived about the flatness of the earth, and that what seems quite level is in reality curved. In a wide level country, one cannot see trees and houses farther away [42]² than some four or five miles. If we climb to the top of a church-tower, we find³ many objects come into sight which could not be seen from the ground. And if there happens to be [40] a range of hills in the neighbourhood, we can note from their tops a still larger number of points that before were hidden. The higher one climbs above ground, therefore,⁴ the farther one can see.

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE.

¹ The comparative will be more idiomatic in German. ² farther away, in einer weiteren Entfernung. ³ we find, bemerken wir, daß.

⁴ Begin the sentence with 'therefore,' folglich.

XXXII

THE AIR

Though we cannot see the air, we can [41] feel it when it moves. A light breeze, or a strong gale, can be just as

little seen by the eye [28] as still air; and yet we readily feel their motion. But even when the air is still, it can make itself sensible in another way, viz.,¹ by its temperature. For air, like common visible things, can be warmed and cooled.² This warming and cooling of the air is familiar to us in dwelling-houses. If you³ pass out of a warm room on a winter's day into the open air, you feel cold. Whence does this sensation come? Not from anything you can see, for your⁴ feet, though resting [34] on the frozen ground, are protected by leather, and do not yet feel the cold. It is the cold air encircling you⁵ on all sides that robs you of your heat; while at the same time you are giving off or radiating heat from your skin into the air. On the other hand, if, after standing⁶ a while in the chilly winter air, you return into the room again, you feel warm. Here, again, the feeling does not come from any visible object, but from the invisible air which touches your skin, and is thus robbed of its heat. Air, then, may vary [27] greatly in temperature—that is, it may sometimes be warm and sometimes cold, and yet still remain quite invisible. Now, how is it that the atmosphere should sometimes be warm and sometimes cold? Where does the heat come from? And how does the air acquire it?

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE.

¹ viz., nämŭđ. ² Either use a reflexive verb, or comparatives with *werben*. ³ you, man. ⁴ your, say rather 'our' after man.

⁵ which encircles us; and go on using 'we' instead of 'you,' etc.

⁶ If we on the other hand . . . § 43.

XXXIII

OF THE WIND

It is easy now and then to watch how wind arises. Suppose, for instance,¹ that during the summer we visit the sea-coast. In the morning and early part of the day a gentle

wind will often be noticed [28 *b*], blowing [35] from the sea to the land. As the day advances and the heat increases, the wind dies away.² But after a while, when the day is beginning to sink towards evening, another breeze may be noticed [28 *a*] springing up [35] from the opposite quarter, and blowing³ with a delicious coolness from the land to the sea. These breezes are the result of the unequal heating and cooling of sea and land.

Let us understand how this takes place.⁴ On a hot day, stones, soil, or other parts of the land become very warm under the sun's rays; yet if one bathes in the sea at that time, one feels its waters to be pleasantly cool. This shows that the land becomes more quickly hot than the sea. On the other hand, after such a hot day the surface of the land becomes at night much colder than the sea. It parts with⁵ its heat sooner than the sea does. By day, the hot land heats the air above it, and makes it lighter, so that it ascends; while the cooler and heavier air, lying on the sea, flows landward as a cool and refreshing sea-breeze. By night, this state of things is just reversed⁶; for then⁷ the air which lies on the chilled land, being colder and heavier than that which covers the warmer sea, flows⁸ seaward as a cool land-breeze.

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE.

¹ Suppose, for instance, laßt uns z. B. annehmen, daß. ² dies away, wird immer schwächer. ³ Either as suggested in the text or by: kann man bemerken, wie, etc. ⁴ Wir wollen den Grund dieser Erscheinung untersuchen. ⁵ it parts with, es giebt — aus. ⁶ umgekehrt, das Gegenteil. ⁷ then, zu dieser Zeit. ⁸ flows, weht.

XXXIV

THE WATER OF THE SEA

Unlike the common water of our rivers and lakes, the water of the sea is salt.¹ A drop of clear spring-water, if [43] allowed to evaporate from a piece of glass, leaves no

sensible trace behind. The water of springs, however, always contains some mineral substances dissolved in it, and these, not rising [33] in vapour, are left behind when the water evaporates. But the quantity of them in a single drop of water is so minute that, when the drop dries up, it leaves no perceptible speck or film. Take,² however, a drop of sea-water, and allow it to evaporate. You find a little white point or film left behind, and on placing that film under a microscope you see it to consist of delicate cubical crystals of common or sea salt, together with other slender crystals, most of which are gypsum. Breathe on the film, and it rapidly becomes again a drop of water; the salts³ have united [27] with the condensed moisture and are once more dissolved. A similar experiment is made [28 a] when one bathes in the sea and allows the salt water to dry on the body. A crust of salt is soon felt [28 a] to have been left behind upon the skin.

SIR ARCHIBALD GEIKIE.

¹ Use an adjective. ² In this sentence, you may either preserve the English idiom, or better say, either: *wenn wir aber*, or, *wenn man aber*. ³ the salts, *die Salze*. See P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 55.

XXXV

SCHOOL-BOOKS

My dear Boys,—When I was your age, there were¹ no such children's books as there are now. Those which we had were few and dull, and the pictures in them ugly and mean; while you have your choice of books without number,² clear, amusing, and pretty, as well as really instructive, on subjects which were only talked of fifty years ago by a few learned men, and very little understood even by them. So, if mere reading³ of books would make wise men, you ought to grow up much wiser than us old fellows. But mere reading of wise books will not make you wise men; you must use for

yourselves⁴ the tools with which books are made wise ; and that is,⁵ your eyes, and ears and common sense.

CHARLES KINGSLEY.

I remember, in my youth, there were detestable books which ought to have been burned by the hand of the common hangman, for they contained questions and answers, to be learned by heart,⁶ of this sort, 'What is a horse ? The horse is termed *Equus caballus* ; belongs to the class Mammalia ; order, Pachydermata ; family, Solidungula.' Was any human being wiser for learning⁷ that magic formula ? Was he not more foolish, inasmuch as he was deluded into taking words for knowledge [7] ? It is that kind of teaching that one wants to get rid of, and banished out of science. Make it as little as you like,⁸ but, unless that which is taught is based on actual observation and familiarity with facts, it is better left alone.⁹

T. H. HUXLEY.

¹ either, gab es (§ 22), or hatten wir. Use throughout this extract for you and your the second person plural. ² without number, zahllos.

³ mere reading, das bloße Lesen.

⁴ for yourself, selbst, selbstständig.

⁵ that is, das heißt.

⁶ to be learned by heart, welche auswendig gelernt werden mußten.

⁷ for learning, nach Erlernung.

⁸ lehren so

wenig du willst.

⁹ to leave alone, bleiben lassen.

XXXVI

MODERN LANGUAGES

Modern¹ languages are supposed to be useful for conversation. They are, however, very rarely studied or practised to the degree necessary for that² use. The foreigner may be able to order his dinner at his hotel and ascertain when the train starts, but in cultivated society he only pretends to be able to follow what is said.³ His⁴ impressions about the talk that is going on around him⁵ are a succession of misunderstandings. He sits silent and smiling, and he endeavours to look as if he were not outside and in the dark ; but he is

[41] in the dark, or, worse still, surrounded by deceptive glimpses. It would be better if French or English were ⁶ like Chinese to him.

The belief that modern languages are easy, although [43] erroneous, is against ⁷ them, the truth being ⁸ that pupils do not go far enough in these languages to become aware of the real difficulties. They think that French is easy, not knowing that French boys, specially drilled and disciplined in their own tongue, have to be wary to avoid its pitfalls.⁹

PHILIP GILBERT HAMERTON.

¹ Use the comparative, die neueren Sprachen. ² for that use, zu einem solchen Gebrauche. ³ what is said, die Unterhaltung. ⁴ Do not say seine, but: which he receives. ⁵ about the talk that is going on around him, von der Konversation der Gesellschaft. ⁶ were unknown to him like. ⁷ against them, ihnen schädlich. ⁸ the truth is that. ⁹ to avoid pitfalls, lassen vermeiden, keine Böcke schießen.

XXXVII

A GREAT MAN

All of us encounter, at least once in our life, some individual who utters words that make us think ¹ for ever. There are [22] some men whose phrases are oracles; who condense in a sentence the secrets of life. A great thing is a great book; but greater than all is the talk of a great man.

And what is a great man? Is it a minister of state? Is it a victorious general? A gentleman in the Windsor uniform? A field-marshal covered with stars? Is it a prelate or a prince? A king, even an emperor? It may be all these; yet these, as we must all daily feel, are not necessarily great men. A great man is one ² who affects the mind of his generation, whether he be a monk in his cloister agitating [34] Christendom, or a monarch crossing [34] the Granicus and giving [34] a new character to the Pagan world.

LORD BEACONSFIELD.

¹ make us think, uns zum Nachdenken anregen. ² one=a man.

XXXVIII

THE IRISH BEGGAR

At first view you¹ might have taken the beggar for a Spaniard. He was tall; and if he had been a gentleman, you¹ would have said that there was an air of dignity² in his figure. He seemed very old, yet he appeared more worn by sorrow than by time. Leaning upon a thick oaken stick as he³ took off his hat to ask for alms, his white hair was blown by the wind.⁴

'Health and long life to you!'⁵ said he. 'Give an old man something to help to bury him. He is past his labour,⁶ and cannot trouble this world any way.'

He held his hat towards us, with⁷ nothing importunate in his manner, but rather with a look of confidence in us, mixed with habitual resignation. His thanks were, 'Heaven bless you!—Long life and success to you!⁸ to you and yours! and may you never want a friend as I do.'

The last words were spoken low.⁹ He laid his hand upon his heart as he bowed to us, and walked slowly away. We called him back; and upon our questioning him further, he gave the following account of himself.¹⁰

MARIA EDGEWORTH.

¹ you, man. ² an air of dignity, etwas Würdevolles. ³ als er —
gesehen, den Gut . . . ⁴ was blown by the wind, flatterte im Winde.

⁵ Supply: I wish you. ⁶ past his labour, arbeitsunfähig, über das
arbeitsfähige Alter hinaus. ⁷ with = there was. ⁸ may he give you.

⁹ low, mit leiser Stimme. ¹⁰ of himself, über seine Persönlichkeit.

XXXIX

TOM FOOL A KNIGHT

In these days when honours [7] have been so profusely distributed by the most liberal of administrations [28 c] and

the most popular of kings, I cannot but [45] think that Tom Fool ought to be knighted. And I assure the reader that this is not said on the score of personal feeling, because I have the honour to be one of his relations, but purely with regard to his own claims, and the fitness of things, as well as to the character of the Government.

It is disparaging him,¹ and derogatory to his family, which in undisputed and indisputable antiquity exceeds any other in these kingdoms—it is disparaging him, I say, to speak of him as we do of Tom Hood and Tom Moore and Tom Sheridan. Can it be supposed,² if he were properly presented to His Majesty, and knelt to kiss the royal hand, that our most gracious and good-natured king would for a moment hesitate to give him the accolade, and to say to him, ‘Rise, Sir Thomas!’³ I do not ask for the Guelphic order; simple knighthood would, in this case, be more appropriate.

Merry Andrew, likewise, should be presented to receive the same honour, for sundry good reasons, and especially for this, that there is already a Sir Sorry Andrew.

ROBERT SOUTHEY.

¹ it is to disparage him, es heißt seine Verdienste schmählen, ihn herabsetzen. ² Construe: can it be supposed that, if. ³ If you translate here ‘Sir Thomas’ by Ritter Hans, you may go on and translate Merry Andrew by Hans Wurst, and Sir Sorry Andrew by Wurstreiter.

XL

THE ART OF KEEPING IN GOOD HEALTH

If you mean to keep as well as possible, the less you think about your health the better.¹ You know enough not to eat or drink what you have found does not agree with you. You ought to know enough² not to expose yourself needlessly to draughts. If you take a ‘constitutional,’ walk with the

wind when you can, and take a closed car against it if you can get one. Walking against the wind is one of the most dangerous kinds of exposure, if you are sensitive to cold. But except a few simple rules such as I have just given, let your health take care of itself, so long as it behaves decently.³ If you want to be sure not to reach threescore and twenty, get a little box of homœopathic pellets and a little book of homœopathic prescriptions. I had a poor friend who fell into that way,⁴ and became at last a regular Hahnemaniac. He left a box of little pills, which at last came into my hands. The poor fellow had cultivated symptoms as other people cultivate roses. When one watches for symptoms, every organ in the body is ready to put in its claim. By-and-by a real illness attacked him, and the box of little pellets was shut up, to minister to his fancied evils no longer.

OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.

¹ Construe: it is the better the less you. Translate *you* by either *du*, *ihr*, *Sie*, or *man*. But in the following sentence you cannot go on with *man*; further on you may again. ² to know enough, *flug*, *berständig* genug sein. ³ kümmern Sie sich nicht um ihre Gesundheit, so lange sie einigermaßen gut ist. ⁴ fell into that way, *auf diese Methode verfiel*.

XLI

A SAGACIOUS DOG

I must tell you a feat of my dog Beau. Walking by the river-side, I observed some water-lilies floating [34] at a distance from the bank. They are a large white flower, with an orange-coloured eye, very beautiful.¹ I had a desire to gather one, and having [33] your long cane in my hand, by the help of it endeavoured to bring one of them within my reach. But the attempt proved vain,² and I walked forward. Beau had all the while observed me attentively. Returning [33] soon after towards the same place, I observed him³

plunge into the river while I was about forty yards distant from him ; and when I had nearly reached the spot, he swam to land with a lily in his mouth, which he came and laid at my foot [7 and 23].

For the sake of ⁴ a longer visit, my dearest coz, I can well be content ⁵ to wait. The country—this country at least—is pleasant at all times, and when the winter is come, or near at hand, we shall have the better chance of being snug. I have made in the orchard the best winter-walk in all the parish, sheltered ⁶ from the east and from the north-east, and open to the sun, except at his rising, all the day.

WILLIAM COWPER.

¹ Put in und. ² proved vain, *fähig fehl, blieb erfolglos*. ³ I observed him, *saß ich ihn . . .*, or *bemerkte ich nie*. ⁴ for the sake of = in the hope of. ⁵ to be content, *sich gebuhen*, § 27. ⁶ Begin a new sentence : It is sheltered.

XLII

THE GROWTH OF LIVING ANIMALS

The living animal increases its size by adding [33] to the substances which compose its body, like substances ; these,¹ however, are chiefly derived directly from other animals or from plants.

The fowl in the farmyard is incessantly pecking about and swallowing now a grain of corn, and now a fly or a worm. In fact, it is feeding, and, as every one knows, would soon die if not supplied with food [44]. It is also a matter of every-day ² knowledge that it would not be of much use to give a fowl the soil of a cornfield, with plenty of air and water, to eat.

In this respect, the fowl is like all other animals ; it cannot manufacture the materials of its body, but it has to take them ready made, or in a condition which requires but very slight

modification, by devouring the bodies either of other animals or of ³ plants. The animal or vegetable substances devoured ⁴ are taken into the animal's stomach; they are there digested or dissolved; and thus they are fitted to be distributed to all parts of the fowl's own body, and applied to its maintenance and growth.

T. H. HUXLEY.

¹ these, you may add: substances. ² everyday, *adj.*, alltäglich, gemein. ³ of, here *von*; why not the genitive? ⁴ the animal devours and takes into its stomach.

XLIII

WHY IRON SHIPS DO FLOAT

(1)

Here are two tumblers of water. Throw some sand or iron-filings into one, and some sawdust into the other. What happens? The sand and the iron-filings sink to the bottom, the sawdust floats at the top.¹ Thus ² that which is lighter than the water floats, and that which is heavier, bulk for bulk,³ sinks. So, if we pour some oil into the water, it floats, and if we pour some coloured spirit in carefully, it also floats; while treacle and quicksilver sink to the bottom, just as the iron-filings do.

We saw that the iron-filings sank, because iron is heavier than water. Here is a piece of the thin tinned sheet-iron that they make tin boxes of. What will happen if we drop it into the water? It is heavier than water, bulk for bulk, and therefore it will sink as you see it does.

But now here is a 'tin' canister, made of this very same tinned sheet-iron. We drop that into the water, and you see it does not sink at all, but floats at the top as if it were made of cork. Here is a perplexity. We were sure just now that iron is heavier than water, and here is an iron box

floating [34]. Is this an exception to the law? Not at all; for what we said was that a thing would float if it were lighter, bulk for bulk, than water.

¹ on the top, oben auf, auf-der Oberfläche. ² thus, so zeigt es sich; auf diese Weise sehen wir. ³ bulk for bulk, Masse für Masse, bei gleichem Umfang.

XLIV

(2)

Now, let us weigh the tin-box, and having weighed it, let us try to find out how much the same bulk of water weighs. This may be done very simply, for the walls of the box are very thin, so that the inside of the box is very nearly as large as the whole box. Consequently, if we fill the box with water, we shall find out, very nearly, what is the weight of a bulk of water [6] as great as that of the box. But if we do this, we shall find that the water which was contained in the box weighs very much more than the box does.¹ So that, bulk for bulk, the box, although it is made of iron, is really lighter than water, and that is why it floats.

You will all have heard of the iron ships which are now so common, and you may have wondered how it is, that ships made of thick plates of iron, riveted together, and weighing many thousand tons, do not go to the bottom. But they are nothing but [45] our tin canisters on a great scale, and they float because each ship weighs less than a quantity of water of the same bulk does. For there is nothing so heavy that it may not be made² to float in water, if the box which holds it is large enough to make the weight of the whole less than the weight of the same bulk³ of water. T. H. HUXLEY.

¹ than the box itself; either leave out *does*, or translate by *weighs*.

² to make to float, es schwimmen machen, so richten, daß . . . ³ the same bulk, der (einer) gleichen Masse.

XLV

PETER SIMPLE MEETS HIS CAPTAIN

(1)

I inquired of the gentleman in the plaid cloak, who was seated by me on the coach, how soon we should be at Portsmouth. He answered that we were passing the lines; but I saw no lines, and was ashamed [27] to show my ignorance. He asked me what ship I was going to join.¹ I could not recollect her name, but I told him it was painted on the outside of my chest, which was coming down by the waggon. All that I could recollect was that it was a French name.

‘Have you no letter of introduction [6] to the captain?’ said he.

‘Yes, I have,’² replied I; and I pulled out my pocket-book in which the letter was. ‘Captain Savage of H.M.S. *Diomedé*,’ continued I, reading to him.³

To my surprise he very coolly proceeded to open the letter, which, when I perceived what he was doing, occasioned⁴ me immediately to snatch the letter from him, stating [33] my opinion at the same time that it was a breach of honour, and that in my opinion he was no gentleman.

‘Just as you please, youngster,’ replied he. ‘Recollect, you have told me I am no gentleman.’

He wrapped his plaid around him, and said no more; and I was not a little pleased at having [32] silenced him by my resolute behaviour.

¹ to join a ship, auf einem Schiffe eintreten. ² I have one. ³ to read something to some one, jemandem etwas vorlesen. ⁴ which when . . ., sobald ich sah, was er that, säumte ich nicht.

XLVI

(2)

The next morning I got up with a heavy head, and with a heavier heart, and as soon as I was dressed, I asked the way

to the George Inn. I took my letter of introduction with me,¹ although I was afraid it would be of little service. When I arrived, I asked, with a trembling voice, whether Captain Thomas Savage, of H.M.S. *Diomedé*, was staying there. The waiter replied, that he was at breakfast with Captain Courtney, but that he would take up my name.² I gave it to him, and in a minute the waiter returned and desired that I would walk up. O how my heart beat!—I never was so frightened—I thought I should have dropped on the stairs. Twice I attempted to walk into the room, and each time my legs failed³ me. At last I wiped the perspiration from my [23] forehead, and with a desperate effort I went into the room.

‘Mr. Simple, I am glad to see you,’ said a voice. I had held my head down,⁴ for I was afraid to look at him, but the voice was so kind that I mustered up courage;⁵ and when I did look up, there sat with his uniform and epaulets, and his [23] sword by his [23] side, the passenger in the plaid cloak, who wanted to open my letter, and whom I had told to his face, that he was no gentleman.

¹ See P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 48, p. 195. ² take up my name, mich anmelßen. ³ to fail, den Dienst versagen. ⁴ ich stand mit gebeugtem Haupte da. ⁵ to muster up courage, Mut fassen, sich ein Herz fassen.

XLVII

(3)

I thought I should have died.¹ I was just² sinking down upon my knees to beg for mercy, when the captain, perceiving [34] my confusion, burst out into a laugh, and said: ‘So you know me again, Mr. Simple? Well, don’t be alarmed; you did your duty in not permitting [33] me to open the letter. I give you credit³ for your conduct. Now sit down and take some breakfast.’

'Captain Courtney,' said he to the other captain, who was at the table, 'this is one of my youngsters, just entering [34] the service. We were passengers yesterday by the same coach.' He then told him the circumstance which occurred, at which they laughed heartily.

'Pray,' Mr. Simple, 'how are your father and mother ?' said the captain.

'Very well, I thank you, sir, and desire me to present their compliments.'

'I am obliged to them. Now I have a little advice to offer you. In the first place, obey your superior officers without hesitation; it is for me,⁴ not for you, to decide whether an order is unjust or not. In the next place, never swear or drink spirits. The first is immoral, the second is a vile habit which will grow upon⁵ you. I never touch spirits myself, and I expect that my young gentlemen will refrain from it also. Now you may go, and as soon as your uniforms arrive, you will repair on board. Good-morning.'

CAPTAIN MARRYAT.

¹ I should have died, say: I should die, or als müßte ich. ² I was just, ich wollte so eben. ³ I give you credit, ich mache Ihnen mein Compliment. ⁴ it is for me, es ist meine Sache. ⁵ to grow upon, über den Kopf wachsen, zur zweiten Natur werden.

XLVIII

OUR BOYS

'Harriet must give us as much of her company¹ as she can while my brother and sister are here. I am sure she will be pleased with the children. We are very proud of the children. Are we not,² papa? I wonder which she will think the handsomest, Henry or John ?'

'Ay, I wonder which she will.³ Henry is a fine boy, but John is very like his mamma. Henry is the eldest; he was

named after me, not after his father. John, the second, is named after his father. Some people are surprised, I believe, that the eldest was not,³ but Isabella would have him⁴ called Henry, which I thought very pretty of her. And he is a very clever boy, indeed. They are all remarkably clever; and they have so many pretty ways. They will [37] come and stand by my chair and say: "Grandpapa, can you give me a bit of string?" and once Henry asked me for a knife, but I told him knives were only made for grandpapas. I think their father is too rough with them very often.'

'He appears rough to you,' said Emma, 'because you are so very gentle yourself; but if you could compare him with other papas, you would not think him rough.'

JANE AUSTEN.

¹ to give one's company, Gesellschaft leisten. ² Are we not? nicht wahr? ³ Complete the sentence. ⁴ would have him, bestand darauf, daß er.

XLIX

CONTRAST OF THE EIGHTEENTH AND NINETEENTH CENTURIES

The man of the eighteenth century travelled on land and sea in much the same way¹ that his forefathers had done hundreds of years before. His communications by letter² with his fellows were carried on [28] in very much the same method. He got his news from abroad and at home after the same slow, uncertain fashion. His streets and houses were lighted very much as they might have been when Mr. Pepys was in London. His ideas of drainage and ventilation were equally elementary and simple. We see a complete revolution in all these things. A man of the present day, suddenly thrust back fifty years in life, would find himself almost as awkwardly unsuited to the ways of that time as

if he were sent back to the age when the Romans occupied Britain. He would find himself harassed at every step he took.² He could do hardly anything as he does it to-day. Whatever the moral and philosophical value of the change in the eyes of thinkers too lofty to concern themselves with the common ways and doings of human life, this is certain at least, that the change is of immense historical importance.

JUSTIN M'CARTHY.

¹ much in the same way, ungefähr in derselben Weise. ² communications by letter, brieflicher Verkehr, § 7. ³ at every step he took, auf Schritt und Tritt.

L

THE PHILOSOPHICAL VAGABOND

(1)

Upon my arrival in town, my first care was to deliver your letter of recommendation to our cousin, who was himself in little better circumstances than I. My first scheme, you know, sir, was to be usher at an academy, and I asked his advice on the affair. Our cousin received the proposal with a true sardonic grin. 'Ay,' cried he, 'this is indeed a very pretty career that has been chalked out for you. I have been an usher to¹ a boarding-school myself; and may I die by an anodyne necklace,² but I had³ rather be an under-turnkey in Newgate. I was up early and late; I was brow-beaten by the master, hated for my ugly face by the mistress, worried by the boys within, and never permitted to stir out to meet civility abroad. But are you sure you are fit for a school? Let us examine you a little. Have you been bred apprentice to the business?'—'No.'—'Then you won't do for⁴ a school. Can you dress the boys' hair?'—'No.'—'Then you won't do for a school. Have you had the smallpox?'—'No.'—'Then you won't do for a school. Can you lie three in a bed?'—'No.'—'Then you won't do for a school. Have

you got a good stomach?'⁵—'Yes.'—'Then you will by no means do for a school. No, sir; if you are for a genteel, easy profession, bind yourself for seven years as an apprentice⁶ to turn a cutler's wheel; but avoid a school by any means.

¹ to, in. ² an anodyne necklace, eine hanfene Halsbinde, ein Strid.

³ I had rather, ich möchte (ich will) lieber. ⁴ to do for, für etwas taugen, passen. ⁵ a good stomach; guten Appetit. ⁶ to bind oneself apprentice, in die Lehre gehen.

LI

(2)

'Yet, come,'¹ continued he, 'I see you are a lad of spirit and some learning: what do you think of commencing author like me? You have read in books, no doubt, of men of genius starving² at the trade; at present I'll show you forty very dull fellows about town that live by it in opulence, all honest, jog-trot men, who go on smoothly and dully, and write history and politics, and are praised; men, sir, who, had they been bred cobblers, would all their lives³ have mended shoes, but never made them.'

Finding [33] that there was no great degree of gentility attaching to the character of an usher, I resolved to accept his proposal. I thought it my glory⁴ to pursue a track which Dryden and Otway trod before me. Big with⁵ these reflections, I sat down, and finding that the best things remained to be said on the wrong side,⁶ I resolved to write a book that should be wholly new. I therefore dressed up three paradoxes with some ingenuity; they were false, indeed, but they were new. The whole learned world, I made no doubt, would rise to oppose my systems, but then I⁷ was prepared to oppose the whole learned world.

¹ come, naßan, § 40. ² Either say: how men starve, or, turn into a relative clause. ³ all their lives, ihr Lebenslang. ⁴ I thought it my glory, ich war stolz darauf, hielt es für. ⁵ big with, voll von, erfüllt von. ⁶ on the wrong side, auf Seiten des Irrthums. ⁷ then I, ich meinerseits.

LII

(3)

‘Well said,¹ my boy,’ cried I. ‘And what subject did you² treat upon? I hope you did not pass over the importance of monogamy? But I interrupt; go on. You published your paradoxes. Well, and what did the learned world say to your paradoxes?’

‘Sir,’ replied my son, ‘the learned world said nothing to my paradoxes; nothing at all, sir. Every man of them³ was employed in praising [31] his friends and himself, or condemning his enemies; and, unfortunately, as I had neither, I suffered the cruellest mortification—neglect.’

‘As I was meditating one day, in a coffee-house, on the fate of my paradoxes, a little man happened [40] to enter the room, and, after some preliminary discourse, finding me to be a scholar, drew out a bundle of proposals, begging [35] me to subscribe to a new edition he was going to give to the world of Propertius with notes. This demand necessarily produced a reply that I had no money; and that concession led him to inquire into the nature of my expectations. Finding [33] that my expectations were just as great as my purse, “I see,” cried he, “you are unacquainted with the town. I’ll teach you a part of it.”⁴ Look at these proposals; upon these very proposals I have subsisted very comfortably for twelve years.”’

OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

¹ well said, recht so!² the father speaks to his son, use du.³ every man of them, alle — männiglich.⁴ I’ll teach you a part of it, ich will Ihnen etwas davon beibringen.

LIII

AN ENGLISH POLITICIAN

(1)

Lady Ellinor opened the window which admitted on the lawn, and in a few moments we were in that part of the

pleasure-grounds¹ which the family reserved from the public curiosity.² We passed by rare shrubs and strange flowers, long ranges of conservatories, in which bloomed and lived all the marvellous vegetation of Africa and the Indies.

‘Mr. Trevanion is fond of flowers?’ said I.

The fair Fanny laughed. ‘I don’t think he knows one from another.’

‘Nor I either,’³ said I; ‘that is, when I fairly lose sight of⁴ a rose or a hollyhock.’

‘The farm will interest you more,’ said Lady Ellinor.

We came to farm-buildings recently erected [36], and, no doubt, on the most approved principle. Lady Ellinor pointed out to me machines and contrivances of the newest fashion, for abridging labour [31], and perfecting the mechanical operations of agriculture.

‘Ah, then, Mr. Trevanion is fond of farming?’

The pretty Fanny laughed again.

‘My father is one of the great oracles in⁵ agriculture, one of the great patrons of all its improvements; but, as for being fond of farming,⁶ I doubt if he knows his own fields when he rides through them.

¹ the pleasure-grounds, die Anlagen. ² reserved from the curiosity of the public, der Neugierde des Publikums verschlossen hielt. ³ nor I either, ich (für mein Teil) auch nicht. ⁴ wenn es über — geht. ⁵ in=of. ⁶ as for being fond of farming, was seine Liebe für den Ackerbau angeht.

LIV

(2)

We returned to the house; and Miss Trevanion offered to show me the picture-gallery. The collection was confined [27] to the works of English artists; and Miss Trevanion pointed out to me the main attractions of the gallery.

‘Well, at least Mr. Trevanion is fond of pictures?’

‘Wrong again,’¹ said Fanny, shaking her arched² head.

'My father is said to be [28] an admirable judge; but he only buys pictures from a sense of duty—to encourage our own painters. A picture once bought,³ I am not sure that he ever looks at it again.'

'What does he then——' I stopped short, for I felt my meditated question was ill-bred.

'What does he like then? you were about to say. Why, I have known him, of course, since I could know anything; but I have never yet discovered what my father does like. No, not even politics [7], though he lives for politics alone. You look puzzled; you will know him better some day, I hope [40]; but you will never solve the mystery—what Mr. Trevanion likes.'

'You are wrong,' said Lady Ellinor, who had followed us into the room, unheard by us. 'I can tell you what your father does more than like⁴—what he loves and serves every hour of his noble life—justice, beneficence, honour, and his country. A man who loves these may be excused [28 f.] for indifference⁵ to the last geranium, or the newest plough, or even (though that offends you more, Fanny) the freshest masterpiece by Landseer, or the latest fashion honoured by Miss Trevanion.'

LORD LYTTON.

¹ Wrong again, wieder falsch geraten! ² archly, schalkhaft. ³ Make a complete clause; ich zweifle ob er je . . . nachdem er es einmal . . . ⁴ does more than like, mehr als gern hat. ⁵ for indifference, wenn er — nicht beachtet; wenn ihm — gleichgültig ist.

LV

BROTHER AND SISTER

(1)

'O how brave you¹ are, Tom! I think you're like Samson. If there came a lion roaring at [35] me, I think you'd fight him—wouldn't you,² Tom?'

'How can a lion¹ come roaring at you, you silly thing? There's no lions, only in the shows.'

'No; but if we were in the lion countries—I mean in Africa, where it's very hot—the lions eat people there. I can show you it in the book where I read it.'

'Well, I should get a gun and shoot him.'

'But if you hadn't got a gun—we might have gone out, you know,² not⁴ thinking—just as we go a-fishing; and then a great lion might run towards us, roaring, and we couldn't get away from him. What should you do, Tom?'

Tom paused, and at last turned away contemptuously, saying: 'But the lion *isn't* coming. What's the use of talking.'

'But I like to fancy⁵ how it would be,' said Maggie, following [35] him. 'Just think what you would do, Tom.'

'Oh, don't bother, Maggie!⁶ you're such a silly.⁷ I shall go and see my rabbits.'

Maggie's heart began to flutter with fear. She dared not tell the sad truth at once, but she walked after Tom in trembling silence⁸ as he went out, thinking [35] how she could tell him the news so as to soften at once his sorrow and his anger; for Maggie dreaded Tom's anger of all things.⁹

¹ Brother and sister address each other with du. ² wouldn't you? nicht wahr? ³ you know, ja, § 40. ⁴ not, ohne zu. ⁵ I like to fancy, ich stelle mir gern vor. ⁶ Maggie, Gretchen, Gretel. If you like, you may, in this extract, change Tom into Hans, and then you have the corresponding German: Hansel und Gretel. ⁷ such a silly, so ein dummes Ding. ⁸ trembling and silent. ⁹ of all things, über alles.

LVI

(2)

'Tom,' she said, timidly, when they were out of doors, 'how much money did you give for your rabbits?'

'Two half-crowns and a sixpence,' said Tom, promptly.

'I think I have a great deal more than that in my steel-purse, upstairs. I'll ask mother to give it to you.'

'What for?' said Tom. 'I don't want your money, you silly thing. I've got a great deal more money than you, because I'm a boy. I always have [26] half-sovereigns and sovereigns for my Christmas-boxes, because I shall be a man, and you only have five-shilling pieces, because you're only a girl.'

'Well, but, Tom—if mother would let me give you two half-crowns and a sixpence out of my purse to put into your pocket and spend, you know; and buy some more rabbits with it.'

'More rabbits? I don't want any more.'

'Oh, but, Tom, they're all dead.'

Tom stopped immediately in his walk and turned round towards Maggie. 'You forgot to feed 'em, then?'¹ he said, his colour heightening for a moment, but soon subsiding.² 'I don't love you,³ Maggie. You shan't go fishing with me to-morrow. I told you to go and⁴ see the rabbits every day.' He walked on again.

¹ Put *then* in the beginning of the sentence.
 sein Gesicht färbte sich — rot, aber — entfärbte sich.
 ich bin dir nicht mehr gut.

² his colour . . . ,

³ I don't love you,

⁴ to go and see = you should see.

LVII

(3)

With this terrible conclusion, Tom ran away from Maggie towards the mill [42]. Maggie stood motionless for a minute or two; then she turned round and ran into the house, and up to her attic, where she sat on the floor, and laid her head against the worm-eaten shelf, with a crushing sense of misery.¹ Tom was come home, and she had thought how

happy she should be—and now he was cruel to² her. What use was anything, if Tom didn't love her?³

Maggie soon thought she had been hours in the attic, and it must be tea-time, and they were all having their tea, and not thinking of her. Well, then she would stay up there and starve herself—hide herself behind the tub, and stay there all night, and then all would be frightened, and Tom would be sorry. . . .

But she knew Tom's step, and her heart began to beat violently with the sudden shock of hope. He only stood still at the top of the stairs and said, 'Maggie, you're to come down.' But she rushed to him and clung round his neck, sobbing, 'O Tom, please forgive me—I can't bear it—I will always be good—always remember things—do love me—please, dear Tom!'

'Don't cry then, Magsie⁴—here, eat a bit o' cake.'

Maggie's sobs began to subside, and she put out her mouth for the cake and bit a piece; and then Tom bit a piece, just for company, till there was no more cake except what was downstairs.

¹ Say: and felt herself crushed by misery, von Unglück zerstampft.

² to, gegen. ³ to love some one, jemandem gut sein is the usual childish expression.

⁴ Magsie, Gretchen.

LVIII

(4)

So ended the sorrows of this day, and the next morning Maggie was trotting with her fishing-rod in one hand, and a handle of the basket in the other, stepping¹ always, by a peculiar gift, in the muddiest places, and looking radiant from under her beaver-bonnet because Tom was good to her. She had told Tom, however, that she should like him² to put the worms on the hook for her, although she accepted his word when he assured her that worms did not feel (it

was Tom's private opinion that it did not much matter if they did ³). He knew all about worms and fish, and those ⁴ things; and what birds were mischievous, and how padlocks opened, and which way the handles of gates were to be lifted. Maggie thought this sort of knowledge very wonderful—much more wonderful than remembering what was in the books. Tom, indeed, was of opinion that Maggie was a silly little thing; all girls were silly—they could not throw a stone so as to hit anything, couldn't do anything with a pocket-knife, and were frightened [28 b] at frogs. Still he was very fond of his little sister, and meant always to take care of her, make her his housekeeper, and punish her when she did wrong.

¹ Begin a new sentence: She had a peculiar gift of stepping, etc.

² that she should like him to . . ., daß sie es gern sähe wenn. ³ daß es gleichviel war, ob sie es fürchten oder nicht. ⁴ those, dergleichen.

LIX

(5)

They were on their way to the Round Pool—that wonderful pool, which the floods had made a long while ago; no one knew how deep it was. The sight of the old favourite spot always heightened Tom's good-humour, and he spoke to Maggie in the most amicable whispers, as he opened the precious basket, and prepared their tackle. He threw her line for her, and put the rod into her hand. Maggie thought it probable ¹ that the small fish would come to her hook, and the large ones to Tom's. But she had forgotten all about ² the fish, and was looking dreamily at the glassy water, when Tom said, in a loud whisper, 'Look, look, Maggie!' and came running to prevent her [32] from snatching [30] her line away.

Maggie was frightened lest she had been doing something

wrong, as usual, but presently Tom drew out her line, and brought a large tench bouncing on the grass.

Tom was excited.

‘O Magsie! you little duck! Empty the basket!’

Maggie was not conscious of unusual merit, but it was enough that Tom called her Magsie, and was pleased with her. She never knew she had a bite³ till Tom told her; but she liked fishing very much.

It was one of their happy mornings. They trotted along and sat down together, with no thought that life would ever change much for them. They would only get bigger and not go to school, and it would always be like the holidays; they would always live together, and be fond of each other.

GEORGE ELIOT.

¹ thought it probable, hielt es für wahrscheinlich. ² to forget all about a thing, etwas ganz vergessen. ³ (that) she had a bite, daß ein Fische angebissen hatte.

LX

A LETTER OF W. COWPER

MY DEAR WILLIAM,—Your letters are always welcome. You can always either find something to say, or can amuse me and yourself with a sociable and friendly way¹ of saying nothing. I never found that a letter was the more easily written, because the writing of it had been delayed. On the contrary, experience has taught me to answer soon, that I may do it without difficulty. It is in vain² to wait for an accumulation of materials in a situation such as yours and mine, productive of few events.³ At the end of our expectations we shall find ourselves as poor as at the beginning.

We live in a state of such uninterrupted retirement, in which incidents worthy to be recorded⁴ occur so seldom, that I always sit down with a discouraging conviction that

I have nothing to say. The event commonly justifies the presage. For when I have filled my sheet, I find that I have said nothing.

Thus far I proceeded easily enough; and here I laid down my pen, and spent some minutes in recollection, endeavouring [33] to find some subject, with which I might fill the little blank⁵ that remains. But none presents itself. Farewell, therefore, and remember those who are mindful of you.

WILLIAM COWPER.

¹ with a — way, auf (in) — Weise. ² it is in vain, es nützt nichts, es ist umsonst. ³ Enlarge to a complete clause. ⁴ worthy to be recorded, die der Aufzeichnung wert sind, die verdienen aufgezeichnet zu werden. ⁵ the little blank, das unbeschriebene, weiße Blättchen.

LXI

C. J. FOX TO LORD HOLLAND

I am glad you are reading Euripides, but I had rather [26] you had begun almost any other play than the *Hippolytus*. I have just been reading the *Phænissæ* on account of¹ Porson's new edition, and find that it deserves a higher rank among Euripides' plays than I had given it in my mind. The scene with Iocasta and the two brothers is famous. Of all poets Euripides appears to me without exception the most useful for a public speaker.

I do not wonder you like the *Odyssey* better than ever; it is the most charming reading of all. I have read near half of it over again lately. I do not know whether I do not like the book with Nausikaa² the best of all, but it is all³ delightful, and there is such variety which I am afraid the *Iliad* cannot boast of.

¹ on account of, bei Gelegenheit von.

² Say: in which N. appears.

³ all = the whole *Odyssey*, the whole poem.

LXII

THE HON. MARIA HOLROYD TO EDWARD GIBBON

(1)

COBLENZ, Oct. 21, 1791.

Our adventures since [43] I wrote from Strassburg have been very numerous, and if everybody had been equally disposed with myself to be entertained with them, they would have lost much of their unpleasant circumstances.¹ Papa had determined to go from Strassburg to Mannheim by² Rastadt; but the innkeeper advised us to go³ on the other side of the Rhine, as we should find the inns all full in Germany, and the post-horses very bad. The rain was incessant⁴ all day, and had continued for [41] two days before. We found the roads very bad, and lost our way in a large forest; quite dark⁵; amidst⁶ many ejaculations from mamma. When we at last arrived at Germersheim, where we were to sleep, we found the inn quite full. Travellers are not often, I imagine, so unfortunate as to go³ that road, if I may judge from the astonishment and, I hope, admiration our appearance caused. There was but one room where we could sleep—and we all arranged ourselves in three beds, after having quieted some delicate scruples⁷ of papa's, who proposed sleeping in the coach—however, by putting out [33] the candles, nobody found it necessary to blush.

¹ unpleasantness, Unannehmlichkeit.
 zu reifen. ⁴ it rained incessantly.

⁶ amidst this (dazwischen) we heard.

² by, über. ³ to go, zu fahren,
 Form a complete sentence.

⁷ delicate scruples, Bedenlichkeiten.

LXIII

(2)

We left this charming place very early, breakfasted at Spire, and arrived at Mannheim early enough to see all the

lions before dinner. I was much entertained with¹ the gallery of pictures in the Elector's palace. It was much superior to anything I had seen. The library is very handsome. Papa went to the play in the evening and made an acquaintance there, whom he brought home with him, and talked commerce and agriculture till nearly one in the morning. The next day we went to Mayence, and the day after saw the castle, the provost's house, the cathedral, etc., and left Mayence at two o'clock in a tolerably good boat. But the wind was quite contrary, and it was very late when we arrived at Bingen. Mamma did not take a fancy to² navigation in the least. For my part,³ I enjoyed it very much, as the banks of the Rhine, particularly from Bingen to Coblenz, are very picturesque. The great number of castles made me imagine⁴ myself in the age of chivalry, and I almost persuaded myself I was a distressed damsel carried away against my will. The next thing, of course, was to expect⁵ a brave knight to set me free, but as none made their appearance, I was obliged to quit my romantic ideas and my castles in the air, of which I had plenty, as well in my head as around me. In plain English, I was much pleased with the day's journey, and mamma was pretty well reconciled to seeing water all round her, which was at first a grievance.

¹ I was much entertained with, ich fand viel Unterhaltung in. ² to take a fancy to, Gefchmack an etwas finden. ³ for my part, was mich angeht. ⁴ made me imagine, wirkte so auf meine Einbildungskraft, daß ich mich — versetzt glaubte. ⁵ The next thing, of course, was to expect, was ich zunächst erwartete, war natürlich, daß.

LXIV

(3)

Our famous¹ adventures begin here. We arrived at Coblenz at five o'clock last Wednesday, and found every

inn in the town full of *Panaches blancs*.² After staying three hours in the boat, with difficulty papa found one room, with one bed, without curtains, and no other furniture of any kind in it. We preferred this to sleeping³ in the boat, the only alternative, and accordingly we females slept on mattresses on the ground. As there were no curtains, it was impossible to admit papa of the party,⁴ and he remained all night in the boat. The account that was brought us of the room we were to sleep in, was that between forty and fifty officers were in two rooms at each end of ours, which opened with folding-doors. Upon a nearer inquiry, the number was reduced to between ten and twenty; but they are tolerably quiet, considering⁵ they are Frenchmen. Yesterday was passed inquiring [33] for lodgings, and by the help of the Duc de Guiche, the woman of the house was prevailed upon to give us three garrets, perfectly unfurnished; but that we considered as charming accommodation compared to the higgledy-piggledy⁶ style we had been accustomed to. But the ground is still our bed. LADY STANLEY OF ALDERLEY.

¹ famous, use here famos.

² Remember that this was written during the French invasion. ³ we preferred [21] to sleep rather here than in the boat, the only alternative which we had.

⁴ to admit papa of the party, Papa in unsere Gesellschaft aufzunehmen. ⁵ considering, wenn man bedenkt. ⁶ higgledy-piggledy, wißt und wiß.

LXV

FROM A PROPOSED DEDICATION TO GOETHE

My principal object in addressing¹ you was to testify my sincere respect and admiration of a man who, for half a century, has led² the literature of a great nation, and will go down to posterity as the first literary character³ of the age.

You have been fortunate, sir, not only in the writings which have illustrated your name, but in the name itself, as being sufficiently musical for the articulation of posterity.

In this you have the advantage of some of your countrymen, whose names would perhaps be immortal also—if anybody could pronounce them.⁴

It may perhaps be supposed, by this apparent tone of levity,⁵ that I am wanting in intentional respect to you;⁶ but this will be a mistake: I am always flippant in prose. Considering you, as I really and warmly do, in common with all your own, and with most other nations, to be by far the first literary character which has existed in Europe since the death of Voltaire, I felt, and feel desirous⁷ to inscribe to you the following work—not as being either a tragedy or a poem (for I cannot pronounce upon its pretensions to be either one or the other, or both, or neither)—but as a mark of esteem and admiration from a foreigner to the man who has been hailed in Germany ‘the great Goethe.’—I have the honour to be, with the truest respect, your most obedient, very humble servant,

BYRON.

¹ Use a substantive, in dieser—Wibmung, Zueignungsschrift, Zusage an Sie. ² has led = has been the leader, has stood at the head (Spitze).

³ literary character, Schriftsteller. ⁴ Byron alludes to Grillparzer.

⁵ Construe: By this apparent tone, it may, etc. ⁶ daß ich vorzüglich der gebührenden Achtung gegen Sie ermangele. ⁷ and feel desirous, und fühle noch jetzt den Wunsch.

LXVI

ENGLISH HIGHWAYMEN

(1)

On comparing the Great Britain of the last century with the Great Britain of the present day, the change is nowhere more apparent than in the ease and speed of travelling, and the consequent increase¹ of travellers. Of this² the steam-engine is of course the principal cause; but it should be noted, that personal security likewise is a plant of later growth. Only three summers since, a French gentleman³ in

the Highlands was gazing with some surprise at the tranquil and orderly scenes around him, and saying [35] that his friends at Paris had advised him to come upon his journey well provided with pistol and sword, since, as they bid him bear in mind, 'you are going to the country of Rob Roy!' We can scarcely blame these Parisians for so faithfully remembering that little more than a hundred years ago Rob Roy was able to levy his 'blackmail' on all who came beneath the shadow of his mountains. But they might at least, with equal reason, have applied the same advice to England; for much less than a hundred years ago, the great thoroughfares near London, and, above all, the open heaths,⁴ as Bagshot and Hounslow, were infested with robbers on horseback, who bore the name of highwaymen. Booty these men were determined, by some means or other, to obtain.

¹ the consequent increase of, die in Folge dessen vermehrte Anzahl von.

² Supply here a substantive: Erscheinung, Veränderung, Factum.

³ a French gentleman, ein gebildeter Franzose.

⁴ the open heaths, das flache Heidefeld.

LXVII

(2)

In the reign of George the First they stuck up handbills at the gates of many known rich men in London, forbidding [35] any of them, on pain of death, to travel from town without a watch or with less than ten guineas of money. Private carriages and public conveyances were alike the objects of attack. Thus, for instance, in 1775, Mr. Nuthall, the solicitor and friend of Lord Chatham, returning from ¹ Bath in his carriage with his wife and child, was stopped and fired at ² near Hounslow, and died of the fright. In the same year the guard of the Norwich stage was killed in Epping Forest, after he himself had shot dead three highwaymen out of seven that assailed him. Let it not be supposed ³

that such examples were few and far between;⁴ they might, from the records of that time, be numbered by the score; although in most cases the loss was rather of property than of life. These outrages appear to have increased in frequency towards the close of the American war. Horace Walpole, writing from Strawberry Hill at that time, complains that, having lived there in quiet for thirty years, he cannot now stir a mile from his own house, after sunset, without one or two servants armed with blunderbusses.

¹ returning from, auf seiner Rückreise von. ² This is a difficulty frequently occurring in translating from English into German. Here we have two verbs of different construction: 'he was stopped' (acc.), and, 'fired at' (auf ihn gefeuert). ³ let it not be supposed, man glaube nicht. ⁴ were few and far between, sich selten und in langen Zwischenräumen ereigneten.

LXVIII

(3)

Some men of rank of that period—Earl Berkeley, above all—were famed for their skill and courage in dealing with¹ such assailants. One day, so runs the story,² Lord Berkeley, travelling after dark on Hounslow Heath, was wakened from a slumber by a strange face at his carriage-window and a loaded pistol at his breast. 'I have you now, my Lord,' said the intruder, 'after all your boasts, as I hear, that you would never let yourself be robbed!'—'Nor would I now,'³ said Lord Berkeley, putting [33] his hand into his pocket, as though to draw forth his purse, 'but for⁴ that other fellow peeping over your shoulder.' The highwayman hastily turned round to look at this expected intruder, when the Earl, pulling out [35], instead of a purse, a pistol, shot him dead upon the spot.

It is strange that so highly civilised a people should have endured these highway robberies so long. In this respect we

seemed scarcely above the level of the modern Roman. But stranger still, perhaps, to find some of the best writers of the last century treat them as subjects of jest, and almost as subjects of praise. From such productions as *Tom Clinch* of Swift, or the *Beggars' Opera* of Gay, we may collect⁵ that it was the tone in certain circles to depict the highwaymen as daring and generous spirits, who 'took to the road,' as it was termed, under the pressure of some momentary difficulties, the gentlefolk, as it were,⁶ of the profession, and far above the common run of thieves.

LORD MAHON.

¹ to deal with, mit jemandem verfahren, ihn behandeln. ² so runs the story, so erzählt man, so geht die Sage. ³ nor would I now, und ich würde es auch jetzt nicht. ⁴ but for, wäre nicht. ⁵ to collect, sammeln. ⁶ as it were, so zu sagen.

LXIX

THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

(1)

The English language was brought from Germany into England, and being [33] then¹ only a dialect of German, it is still very much like [25] the language of Germany. For² this reason it is often called a Germanic language. The language first³ brought from Northern Germany to England was so different from ours that we should not understand it at all if we heard it spoken;⁴ and we cannot learn to read it without as much study as it costs us, for example, to read French or German. The reason is, that every living language is all the time changing. Some old words go out of use; other new words come into use; some change their meaning; all, or almost all, change their pronunciation; and our phrases, also, the ways in which we put our words together to express our thoughts, become by degrees [9] different. Such changes

are sometimes very slow, but they are all the time going on,⁵ everywhere. A thousand years hence, if it lives so long, the English will be so far unlike what it now is that we, if we were to come to life again, should perhaps not understand it without a great (deal of) trouble.

There are considerable differences in the language even of English speakers⁶ at the present day. In general, an Englishman can tell an American, and an American can tell an Englishman by⁷ the way he talks [6].

¹ then, zu der Zeit. ² for, aus. ³ first, zuerst, im Anfange.

⁴ See P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 30, p. 124: to go on, vor sich gehen.

⁶ people who speak English. Why not Sprecher? What is the meaning of Sprecher? ⁷ to tell by, an etwas erkennen.

LXX

(2)

Then there is also¹ the difference between what we call 'good English' and 'bad English.' By good English we mean those words, and those meanings of them, and those ways of putting them together, which are used by the best speakers, the people of best education; everything which such people do not use, or use in another way, is bad English. Thus bad English is simply that² which is not approved and accepted by good and careful speakers.³ Most persons learn good English by hearing [33] and imitating good speakers, by studying books written correctly and well, by correcting themselves and being corrected by others, and so on. But then we want to use our English not only correctly, but well, so as to please and influence⁴ others. Many of us, too, want to learn other languages than English, languages which answer⁵ the same purposes as our own, but have other means of doing it. We are not content,⁶ either, with merely using

languages ; we want to know something of what language is. The study of language has a great deal to tell us about the history of man, and of what [24] he has done in the world.

WILLIAM DWIGHT WHITNEY.

¹ there is also, *haben wir auch*. ² Supply *English*, *dasjenige Englisch*. ³ people who speak, *Leute, die*. ⁴ to please — to influence ; observe that the two verbs require a different construction. ⁵ answer, here ; *biehen*. ⁶ to be content, *sich begnügen*.

LXXI

OF THE NATURE OF PARTS OF SPEECH

When we say that such¹ a word is of such a Part of Speech, we mean² that it is so in a given context. And this is necessary to observe, because else the very Grammar-book may be misleading to the scholar. The book exhibits lists of words which it calls Nouns or Adjectives or Adverbs, etc., but this is not to be understood as if they bore these characters in themselves,³ and apart from relation⁴ to the context. A large number of words, it is true, have prevalent habits⁵ as Noun or Verb or Conjunction, but this only means to say⁶ that they have been mostly employed in such combinations, and consequently have come to be identified with these functions. If we probe the matter to the bottom, we shall find that the character of such and such a Part of Speech is relative to a given context. Who would hesitate to say, when asked what Part of Speech is *and* or *if*,⁷ that they are Conjunctions, and yet we have all heard of 'ifs and ands' ; and in this phrase they are nouns. The word *grace* is stamped with the character⁸ of a Noun as much as any word can well be, and so is the word *uncle*, and yet they both become Verbs in the following context from Richard II., Act II. 2 :—

Boling. My gracious uncle——

York. Tut, tut!

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle.⁹

JOHN EARLE.

¹ such, dieses oder jenes Wort. ² we mean, wollen wir damit sagen.
³ in themselves, an und für sich. ⁴ apart from, ohne Rücksicht auf.
⁵ have prevalent habits, werden gewöhnlich gebraucht. ⁶ this only means to say, das heißt nur, nicht mehr als.
⁷ In German wenn und aber are the usual examples. Der Mann, der das Wenn und das Aber erdacht, hat wahrlich aus Häderling Gold schon gemacht (Bürger). ⁸ is stamped with the character, trägt das Gepräge.
⁹ In English, a large number of verbs are simply nouns or adjectives which are turned directly into verbs, without addition of suffix or prefix, or any other alteration: to time, to beard, to smooth, to lower. Both French and German require the proper verbal suffix. (Compare my *Introduction to French Prose Composition*, § 45.) The example does therefore not apply to German. Schlegel and Tieck translate the passage:

B. Mein gnäd'ger Onkel.

Y. Pasch, pasch!

Nichts da von Gnade und nichts da von Onkel.

LXXII

ELEMENTARY TEACHING

There are a great many people who imagine that elementary teaching might be properly carried out¹ by teachers provided with only elementary knowledge. Let me assure you that is the profoundest mistake in the world. There is nothing so difficult as to write a good elementary book, and there is nobody so hard to teach properly and well as people who know nothing about a subject; and I will tell you why. If I address an audience of persons who are occupied in the same line of work² as myself, I can assume that they know a vast deal, and that they can find out the blunders I make. If they don't, it is their fault and not mine; but when I appear before a body of people who know nothing about the

matter, who take for gospel whatever I say, surely it becomes needful that I consider what I say, make sure that it will bear examination, and that I do not impose upon the credulity of those who have faith in me. T. H. HUXLEY.

¹ to carry out, erteilen.
dieselbe Branche (fr.).

² the same line of work, dasselbe Fach,

LXXIII

INDUSTRIALISM

The wealth, both of England and France, has been vastly increased by the prodigious creation of new things which has taken place in the present century. They are both of them very old countries, yet almost everything in them is new. A man of sixty, travelling about, is constantly seeing and using things that did not exist when he was born. The railways he travels upon, the hotels where he stays, the great industrial buildings, the shipping, are of¹ his own time. The towns are either recent or in great part reconstructed. The industrial activity of the present age is so enormous that, in the course of the present generation, it has done more in public and private works than all the previous generations had left behind them.

The industrial development of both countries has led to a state of things in which the producing power surpasses the actual wants. To keep the working population in full employment,² it would be necessary to do over again³ all that has been done; but the works accomplished remain as impediments to future labour. Paris does not need to be reconstructed every twenty years; a network of railways has not to be made in every century. Thus industrialism produces both riches and poverty. PHILIP G. HAMERTON.

¹ are of, gehören . . . an, sind Erzeugnisse.
ment, um . . . vollständig zu beschäftigen.

² to keep in full employ-
³ over again, von neuem.

LXXV

THE COSTUMES OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

(1)

Turning away from the proceedings of statesmen and parliaments, I propose in the present chapter to bring before my readers a number of scattered facts, illustrating the habits, manners, conditions, and opinions of the different classes of the English people in the eighteenth century.

Glancing first of all at the upper orders, we shall be at once struck with the immense change which has passed over male attire since the eighteenth century. The contrast of colour between male and female dress which is now so conspicuous then hardly existed; and rank, wealth, and pretension, were still distinctly marked by costly and elaborate attire. Nor was this simply true¹ of the 'bucks,' 'beaux,' 'fribbles,' 'macaronis,' and 'dandies,'² who represented in successive periods the extremes or the eccentricities of fashion. The neutral dress scarcely differing in shape or colour which now assimilates all classes from the peer to the shopkeeper was unknown, and a mode of attire was in frequent use which survives only in Court dress, in the powdered footmen of a few wealthy families, in City pageants, in the red coats of the hunting-field,³ and in the gay colouring of military uniforms.

¹ nor was this simply true, und dieß galt nicht nur von. ² retain the English expressions. ³ of the hunting-field, der Juchsjäger.

LXXV

(2)

The pictures of Reynolds and Gainsborough have made the fashionable attire of their period too familiar to need a detailed description, and it may be abundantly illustrated

from contemporary literature. Thus,¹ when Lord Derwentwater mounted the scaffold, he was dressed in scarlet, faced with velvet, and trimmed with gold, a gold-laced waistcoat, and a white feather in his hat. Dr. Cameron went to execution in a light-coloured coat, red waistcoat and breeches, and a new bag wig. Dr. Johnson's usual attire was a full suit of plain brown clothes, with twisted hair buttons of the same colour, black worsted stockings, a large bushy, greyish wig, and silver buckles; but on the night when his play *Irene* was first acted, he thought it right to appear in the theatre in a scarlet waistcoat with rich gold lace, and a gold-laced hat. Goldsmith went out as a physician² in purple silk small-clothes, and with a scarlet roquelaure, a sword, and a gold-headed cane; and he had [26] other suits which were equally conspicuous. Wilkes wrote to his daughter in Paris, in 1770, asking [35] her to beg Baron Holbach to purchase for him scarlet cloth, of the finest sort and colour, to make a complete suit of clothes, and the most fashionable gold buttons for the whole. He is described, by one of his friends, walking³ to town from a house which he had taken at Kensington, usually attired in a scarlet or green suit edged with gold.

W. E. H. LECKY.

¹ thus, zum Beispiel.
er . . . ging.

² dressed as a physician.

³ walking, wie

LXXVI

THE NORMAN AND THE SAXON

It is seldom remembered, in comparing¹ Norman and Anglo-Saxon in point of civilisation, how very little the Norman brought in comparison with what [24] he destroyed, and how very little he brought that was his own. His law was Frank or Lombard, his general cultivation that of Lanfranc and Anselm, far more Italian than native: in

civilisation—taken in the truer sense of the word—in the organisation of the social life, in the means of obtaining speedy and equal justice, in the whole domain of national jurisprudence, he was far behind² those whom he despised with the insolence of a barbarian; he had forgotten his own language, he had no literature, his art was foreign and purchased. But he was a splendid soldier, he had seen the great world east and west, he knew the balance of power between popes and emperors; and he was a conqueror: he held³ the rod of discipline which was to school England to the knowledge of her own strength and power of freedom: he was to drag her into the general network of the spiritual and temporal politics of the world, rousing her thereby to a consciousness of unsuspected, undeveloped powers.

WILLIAM STUBBS.

¹ Construe: in comparing (wenn man) . . . it is . . . ² he was far behind, stand er weit unter. ³ he held in (his) hands.

LXXVII

THE GOOD, KIND GOVERNESS

(1)

With the young people her method was very simple. She did not pester their young brains with too much learning, but, on the contrary, let them have their own way¹ in regard to educating themselves; for what instruction is more effectual than self-instruction? The eldest was rather fond of books, and as there was² in the old library a considerable provision of works of light literature³ of the last century, both in the French and the English languages, and as nobody ever troubled the book-shelves but herself, Rebecca was enabled agreeably, and, as it were, in playing, to impart a great deal of instruction to Miss Rose Crawley. She and

Miss Crawley read together many delightful French and English works, among which may be mentioned those of the learned Dr. Smollett. Once, when Mr. Crawley asked what the young people were reading, the governess replied, 'Smollett.' 'Oh, Smollett,' said Mr. Crawley, quite satisfied. 'His history is more dull, but by no means so dangerous as that of Mr. Hume. It is history you are reading?' 'Yes,' said Miss Rose; without, however, adding that it was the history of Mr. Humphrey Clinker.

¹ let them have their own way, ließ sie ihren eigenen Weg gehen.

² there was, sich fand, sich befand.

³ light literature, Unterhaltungsliteratur.

LXXVIII

(2)

Miss Violet's tastes were, on the contrary, more rude and boisterous than those of her sister. She knew the sequestered spots where the hens laid their eggs. She could climb a tree to rob the nests of the feathered songsters of their speckled spoils. And her pleasure was to ride the young colts, and to scour the plains like Camilla. She was the favourite of her father and of the stable-men. She was the darling, and withal the terror of the cook; for she discovered the haunts of the jam-pots, and would attack them when they were within her reach. She and her sister were engaged in constant battles.¹ Any of which peccadilloes, if Miss Sharp discovered,² she did not tell to Lady Crawley, who would have told them to the father, or worse, to Mr. Crawley; but promised not to tell if Miss Violet would be a good girl and love her governess.

W. M. THACKERAY.

¹ were engaged in constant battles, lieferten einander beständige Schlächten. ² Construe: if Miss S. discovered any of these . . .

LXXIX

THE PRODIGAL'S RETURN

(1)

I passed several days in rambling [33] about the scenes of my boyhood, partly because I did not know what to do with myself, and partly because I did not know that I should ever see them again. As I came within sight of the school-house, where I had so often been flogged in the cause of wisdom, you¹ would hardly have recognised the truant boy, who, but [45] a few years since, had eloped so heedlessly from its walls. I leaned over the paling of the playground, and watched the scholars at their games, and looked to see if there might not be some urchin among them like I was once, full of gay dreams about life and the world. The playground seemed smaller than when² I used to sport about it. The house and park, too, of the neighbouring squire, had shrunk in size and diminished [27] in magnificence. The distant hills no longer appeared so far off, and, alas, no longer awakened ideas of a fairy land beyond.

¹ you, man.² than when, als zur Zeit wo.

LXXX

(2)

As I was rambling pensively through a neighbouring meadow, in which I had many a time gathered primroses, I met the very pedagogue who had been the tyrant and dread of my boyhood. I had sometimes vowed to myself, when suffering under his rod, that I would have my revenge if ever I met him when I had grown to be a man.¹ The time had come; but I had no disposition to keep my vow. The few years which had matured me into a vigorous man, had shrunk² him into decrepitude. He appeared to have had a paralytic

stroke. I looked at him and wondered that this poor helpless mortal could ever have been an object of terror to me. He tottered feebly along the path, and had some difficulty in getting over a stile. I ran and assisted him. He looked at me with surprise, but did not recognise me, and made a low bow of humility and thanks.³ I had no disposition to make myself known,⁴ for I felt that I had nothing to boast of. The pains he had taken and the pains he had inflicted had been equally useless.

WASHINGTON IRVING.

¹ grown to be a man, zum Manne erwachsen. ² The English verb can be used as a transitive and intransitive verb. Turn the German intransitive verb into a passive with *lassen*. ³ Either insert *besser*, or as in § 8. ⁴ to make myself known, mich erkennen zu geben.

LXXXI

THE HABITS OF AUTHORS

Writers and speakers have their habits, their tricks, if you had rather call them so, as to their ways of writing and speaking. There is a very old and familiar story, accompanied¹ by a feeble jest, which most of my readers may probably enough have met with in Joe Miller or elsewhere. It is that² of a lawyer who could never make an argument without having a piece of thread to work upon³ with his fingers while he was pleading. Some one stole it one day, and he could not get on at all with his speech—he had lost the thread of his discourse, as the story had it. I do not use a string to help me write or speak, but I must have its equivalent. I must have my paper and pen or pencil before me to set my thoughts flowing in such form that they can be written continuously. There have been lawyers who could think out their whole argument in connected order without a single note. There are authors,—and I think there are many—who can compose and finish off a poem or a story

without writing a word of it until,⁴ when the proper time comes, they copy what they carry in their heads.

OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.

¹ which is always told with. ² that = the story of. ³ to work upon, zu brechen, zu zerren. ⁴ Construe: till the proper time comes when.

LXXXII

LATIMER AND WOLSEY

Latimer became early famous as a preacher at Cambridge. In his audacious simplicity, he addressed himself always to his individual hearers, giving [33] his words a personal application, and often addressing men by name. This habit brought him first into difficulty in 1525. He was preaching before the university, when the Bishop of Ely came into the church, being [33] curious to hear him. He paused till the bishop was seated [27]; and when he recommenced, he changed his subject, and drew an ideal picture of a prelate as a prelate ought to be; the features of which,¹ though he did not say so, were strikingly unlike those of his auditor. The bishop complained [27] to² Wolsey, who sent for Latimer, and inquired what he had said. Latimer repeated the substance of his sermon; and other conversation then followed, which showed Wolsey very clearly the nature of the person with whom he was speaking. No eye saw more rapidly than the Cardinal's the difference between a true man and an impostor; and he replied to the Bishop of Ely's accusations by granting [33] the offender a license to preach in any church in England. 'If the Bishop of Ely cannot abide such doctrine as you have here repeated,' he said, 'you shall preach it to his beard,³ let him say what he will.'

JAMES ANTHONY FROUDE.

¹ Begin a new sentence: The features of the picture, etc. ² to, bei.
³ to his beard, ihm zum Trotz, ihm ins Gesicht.

LXXXIII

IRISH ABSENTEEISM

The Northern nations, when [43] they overran the Roman Empire, were in search¹ of homes; and they subdued only to colonise. The feudal system bound the noble to the lands which he possessed; and a theory of ownership of estates [6], as consisting² merely in the receipt of rents from other occupants, was alike unheard of in fact, and repugnant to the principles of feudal society. To Ireland belongs, among its other misfortunes, the credit of having first given birth to absentees. The descendants of the first invaders preferred to regard their inheritance, not as a theatre of duty on which they were to reside, but as a possession which they might farm for their individual advantage. They managed their property by agents, as sources of revenue, leasing them even among the Irish themselves; and the tenantry, deprived of the supporting presence³ of their lords, and governed only in a merely mercenary spirit, transferred back their allegiance to the exiled chiefs of the old race. This was one grave cause of the English failure. JAMES ANTHONY FROUDE.

¹ were in search, war eß um — zu suchen, zu finden. ² as consisting = which consists. ³ the supporting presence = the presence and support.

LXXXIV

THE EASTERN CHURCH

(1)

The Greek Church reminds us of the time when the tongue, not of Rome, but of Greece, was the sacred language of Christendom. It was a striking remark of the Emperor Napoleon, that the introduction of Christianity itself was, in a certain sense, the triumph of Greece over Rome. The

early¹ Roman Church was but a colony of Greek Christians or Grecised Jews. The earliest Fathers of the Western Church—Clemens, Irenæus, Hermas, Hippolytos—wrote in Greek.² The early popes were not Italians but Greeks. The name of 'Pope' is not Latin but Greek—the common and now despised name of every pastor in the Eastern Church. It is true that this Grecian colour was in part an accidental consequence of the wide diffusion of the Greek language by Alexander's conquests through the East, and was thus a sign, not so much³ of the Hellenic as of the Hebrew and Oriental character of the early Christian communities. But the advantage thus given⁴ to the Byzantine Church has never been lost or forgotten. It is a perpetual witness that she is the mother and Rome the daughter. It is her privilege to claim a direct continuity of speech with the earliest times, to boast of reading the whole code of Scripture, old as well as new, in the language in which it was read and spoken by the Apostles.

¹ early, im Anfange, in ihrer ersten Zeit. ² either simply *Greek*, or : in the Greek language. ³ not so much — as, nicht so wohl — als.

⁴ thus given, welcher dadurch — zu theil geworden war.

LXXXV

(2)

The humblest peasant who reads his Septuagint or Greek Testament in his mother-tongue, on the hills of Bœotia, may proudly feel that he has an access to the original oracles of divine truth, which pope and cardinal reach by a barbarous and imperfect translation ; that he has a key of¹ knowledge, which in the West is only to be found [28 b] in the hands of the learned classes.

The Greek Church is thus the only living representative of the Hellenic race, and speaks in the only living voice

which has come down to us from the Apostolic age. But its main characteristic is its lineal² descent from the first Christian empire. Not Athens, not Alexandria, not even Jerusalem, but Constantinople, is the sacred city to which the eyes of the Greek race and of the Eastern Church are turned at this day. We can hardly doubt that it was the point to which the eyes of the whole Christian world were turned when, at the opening of the fourth century, it rose as the first Christian city, at the command of the first Christian emperor, on a site which, by its unequalled advantages, was naturally marked out as the capital of a new world, as the inauguration of a new era.

DEAN STANLEY.

¹ a key of, einen Schlüssel zur.

² lineal, in grader Linie.

LXXXVI

THE DEAD SEA

I bathed in the Dead Sea. The ground covered by the water sloped [27] so gradually that I was not only forced to 'sneak in,' but to walk through the water nearly a quarter of a mile before I could get out of my depth.¹ When at last I was able to attempt to dive, the salts² held in solution³ made my eyes smart so sharply, that the pain I thus suffered, joined with the weakness occasioned by want of food, made me giddy and faint for some moments; but I soon grew⁴ better. I knew beforehand the impossibility of sinking in this buoyant water; but I was surprised to find that I could not swim at my accustomed pace: my legs and feet were lifted so high and dry out of the lake that my stroke was baffled,⁵ and I found myself kicking against the thin air, instead of the dense fluid upon which I was swimming. The water is perfectly bright and clear; its taste detestable. After finishing my attempts at swimming and diving, I took

some time in regaining the shore ; and, before I began to dress, I found that the sun had already evaporated the water which clung to me, and that my skin was thickly incrustated with salts.

A. W. KINGLAKE.

¹ to get out of one's depth, den Grund unter den Füßen verlieren.

² See P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 55, p. 233.

³ held in solution = dissolved.

⁴ grew = felt myself.

⁵ that my stroke was baffled, daß ich vergeblich mit den Armen angriff.

LXXXVII

CROMWELL

Mr. Hallam truly says that, though it is impossible to rank Cromwell with Napoleon as a general, yet 'his exploits were as much above the level of his contemporaries, and more the effects of an original uneducated¹ capacity.' Bonaparte was trained in the best military schools ; the army which he led to Italy was one of the finest that ever existed. Cromwell passed his youth and the prime of his manhood in a civil situation. He never looked on² war till he was forty years old. He had first to form himself, and then to form his troops. Out of raw levies he created an army, the bravest and the best disciplined, the most orderly in peace, and the most terrible in war, that Europe had seen. He called this body into existence. He led it to conquest. He never fought a battle without gaining it. He never gained a battle without annihilating the force opposed to him. Yet his victories were not the highest glory of his military system. The respect which his troops paid to property, their attachment to the laws and religion of their country, their submission to the civil power, their temperance, their intelligence, their industry, are without parallel. It was after the Restoration that the spirit which their great leader had infused into them was most signally displayed [27]. At the command

of the established government—an established government which had no means of enforcing obedience—fifty thousand soldiers, whose backs no enemy had ever seen, laid down their arms, and retired into the mass of the people.

MACAULAY.

¹ uneducated, ungeschult. ² to look on, here: sich um etwas kümmern, mit Aufmerksamkeit betrachten.

LXXXVIII

QUEEN ELIZABETH

Of all the sovereigns who exercised a power which was seemingly absolute, but which in fact depended for support on the love and confidence of their subjects, Elizabeth was by far the most illustrious. It has often been alleged as an excuse for the misgovernment of her successors that they only followed her example, that precedents might be found in the transactions of her reign for persecuting¹ the Puritans, for levying money without the sanction of the House of Commons, for confining men without bringing them to trial, for interfering with the liberty of parliamentary debate. All this may be true. But is no good plea for her successors; and for this plain reason, that they were her successors. She governed one generation, they governed another; and between the two generations there was almost as little in common as between the people of two different countries. It was not by looking¹ at particular measures which Elizabeth had adopted, but by looking at the great general principles of her government, that those who followed her² were likely³ to learn the art of managing untractable subjects. Firm, haughty, sometimes unjust and cruel, in her proceedings towards individuals or towards small parties, she avoided with care, or retracted with speed, every measure

which seemed likely to alienate⁴ the great mass of the people. She gained more honour and more love by the manner in which she repaired her errors than she would have gained by never committing errors. MACAULAY.

¹ Use substantives. ² those who followed her = her successors.

³ were likely, Aussicht hatten, hoffen konnten. ⁴ seemed likely to alienate, zu entfremden drohte.

LXXXIX

THE POWER OF SPAIN UNDER PHILIP II

Whoever wishes to be well acquainted with the morbid anatomy of governments, whoever wishes to know how great states may be made feeble and wretched, should study the history of Spain. The empire of Philip the Second was undoubtedly one of the most powerful and splendid that ever existed in the world. There is reason¹ to believe that his annual revenue amounted, in the season of his greatest power, to a sum near ten times as large as that which England yielded to Elizabeth. He had a standing army of fifty thousand excellent troops, at a time when England had not a single battalion in constant pay. His ordinary naval force consisted of a hundred and forty galleys. He held, what no other prince in modern times has held, the dominion both of the land and of the sea. During the greater part of his reign he was supreme on both elements. His soldiers marched up to [42] the capital of France; his ships menaced the shores of England. It is no exaggeration to say that, during several years, his power over Europe was greater than even that of Napoleon. At the same time, Spain had what Napoleon desired in vain, ships, colonies, and commerce. All the gold of the West, and all the spices of the East, were received and distributed by her. Even after the defeat of

the Armada, English statesmen continued to look with great dread on the maritime power of Philip. But how art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning.

MACAULAY.

¹ there is reason, man hat Grund.

XC

AN INVITATION

(1)

The Coles¹ had been settled some years in Highbury, and were very good sort of people, friendly, liberal, and unpretending; but, on the other hand, they were of low origin, in trade,² and only moderately genteel. On their first coming into the country they had lived in proportion to their income, quietly, keeping³ little company, and that little unexpensively; but the last year or two had brought them a considerable increase of means—the house⁴ in town had yielded greater profits, and fortune in general had smiled upon them. With their wealth, their views increased; their want of a larger house, their inclination for more company. They had added to their house, to their number of servants, to their expenses of every sort; and by this time were, in fortune and style of living, second only to the family at Hartfield. Their love of society, and their new dining-room, prepared everybody for their keeping dinner-company; and a few parties, chiefly among the single men, had already taken place. The regular and best families Emma could hardly suppose they would presume to invite⁵—neither Donwell, nor Hartfield, nor Randalls. Nothing should tempt her to go, if they did; and she regretted that her father's known habits would be giving her refusal less meaning⁶ than she could wish. The Coles were very respectable in their

way,⁷ but they ought to be taught that it was not for them to arrange the terms on which the superior families would visit them. This lesson, she very much feared, they would receive only from herself; she had little hope⁸ of Mr. Knightly, none of Mr. Weston.

¹ Either preserve the English plural, or germanise it, die Colleen, or say die Familie C. ² in trade, Handelsleute. ³ Begin a new sentence: They kept. ⁴ the house, das Geschäft. ⁵ Construe: Emma could hardly suppose that they would. ⁶ to give meaning, Bedeutung verleihen. ⁷ in their way, in ihrer Art. ⁸ to have hope in some one, Hoffnung auf jemanden setzen.

XCI

(2)

But she had made up her mind how to meet this presumption so¹ many weeks before it appeared, that when the insult came at last, it found her very differently affected. Donwell and Randalls had received their invitation, and none had come for her father and herself; and Mrs. Weston's accounting for it with,² 'I suppose [40] they will not take the liberty with you; they know you do not dine out,' was not quite sufficient. She felt that she should like to have had the power of refusal; and afterwards, as the idea of the party to be assembled there, consisting precisely of those whose society was dearest to her, occurred again and again,³ she did not know that she might not have been tempted to accept. Harriet was to be there in the evening, and the Bateses. They had been speaking of it as they walked about Highbury the day before, and Frank Churchill had most earnestly lamented her absence. Might not the evening end in a dance? had been a question of his. The bare possibility (of it) acted as a further irritation on her spirits [7], and⁴ her being left in solitary grandeur, even

supposing⁵ the omission to be intended as a compliment, was but poor comfort.

It was the arrival of this very invitation, while the Westons were at Hartfield, which made their presence so acceptable; for though her first remark on reading it was, that, 'of course it must be declined,' she so very soon proceeded to ask them what they advised her to do, that their advice for her going was most prompt and successful.⁶

¹ You may add: and that. ² Mrs. W. accounting for it with, die Art wie Frau W. den Umstand erklärte. ³ occurred again and again, ihr wiederholentlich in den Sinn kam. ⁴ Construe: and it was but a poor comfort for her, to be left (to remain). ⁵ supposing, unter der Annahme, daß. ⁶ daß ihr Rat hinzugehen ebenso schnell gegeben wie angenommen wurde.

XCII

(3)

She owned that, considering everything, she was not absolutely without inclination for the party.¹ The Coles expressed themselves so properly—there was so much real attention in the manner of it—so much consideration for her father. 'They would have solicited the honour earlier, but had been waiting the arrival of a folding-screen from London, which they hoped would keep Mr. Woodhouse from any draught of air, and, therefore, induce him the more readily to give them the honour of his company.' Upon the whole,² she was very persuadable [18]; and it being briefly settled among themselves how it might be done without neglecting his comfort—how certainly Mrs. Goddard, if not Mrs. Bates, might be depended on for bearing him company—Mr. Woodhouse was to be talked into an acquiescence of his daughter's going out to dinner on a day now near at hand, and spending the whole evening away from him.³ As for his going, Emma did not wish him to think it possible;⁴ the hours would be too late,⁵ and the

party too numerous. He was soon pretty well resigned [27].

'I am not fond of dinner-visiting,' said he, 'I never was. No more is Emma. Late hours do not agree with us. I am sorry that Mr. and Mrs. Cole should have done it.⁶ I think it would be much better if they would come in one afternoon next summer and take tea with us; take⁷ us in their afternoon-walk, and get home without being in the damp of the evening. The dews [7] of a summer evening are what⁸ I would not expose anybody to.'

¹ not without inclination for the party, nicht ganz abgeneigt wäre, zu dieser Gesellschaft zu gehen, die Einladung anzunehmen. ² upon the whole, in ganzen, überhaupt, schließlich. ³ away from him, außer dem Hause. ⁴ Emma did not wish that he should think of the possibility of going himself. ⁵ they would come home too late. ⁶ have invited us. ⁷ take, besuchen. ⁸ Either leave out *are what*, or say: ist ein übler Umstand, dem . . . , § 24.

XIII

(4)

'You will make my excuses, my dear, as civilly as possible. You will say that I am quite an invalid, and go nowhere, and therefore must decline her obliging invitation. But you will do everything right.¹ I need not tell you what is to be done. We must remember² to let James know the carriage will be wanted³ on Tuesday. I shall have no fears for you with him.⁴ And when you get there, you must tell him at what time you would have him come for you again; and you had⁵ better name an early hour. You will not like staying late. You will get very tired when tea is over.'

'But you would not wish me to come away before I am tired, papa?'

'Oh no, my love; but you will soon be tired. There will

be a great many people talking at once. You will not like the noise.'

'But, my dear sir,' cried Mr. Weston, 'if Emma comes away early, it will be breaking up the party.'

'And no great harm if it does,' said Mr. Woodhouse. 'The sooner every party breaks up the better.'

'But you do not consider how it may appear to the Coles. Emma's going away⁶ directly after tea might be giving offence. They are good-natured people, and think little of their own claims;⁷ but still they must feel that anybody's hurrying away is no great compliment; and Miss Woodhouse's doing it would be more thought of than any other person's in the room. You would not wish to mortify the Coles, I am sure, sir; friendly, good sort of people as ever lived,⁸ and who have been your neighbours these ten years.'

¹ you will do everything right, du wirst alles schon ausrichten, richtig befehlen. ² remember = not forget. ³ that you will want.
⁴ with him = when he is with you. ⁵ you had, du solltest. ⁶ wenn Emma . . . ⁷ think little of their claims, machen bescheidene Ansprüche.
⁸ as ever lived, auf der Welt.

XCIV

(5)

'No, upon no account in the world,¹ Mr. Weston. I am much obliged to you for reminding me. I should be extremely sorry to be giving them any pain. I know what worthy people they are. Perry tells me that Mr. Cole never touches malt liquor. You would not think it to look at him, but he is bilious—Mr. Cole is bilious. No, I would not be the means² of giving them any pain. My dear Emma, we must consider this. I am sure, rather than run the risk of hurting Mr. and Mrs. Cole, you would stay a little longer than you might wish. You will not regard

being tired.³ You will be perfectly safe, you know [40], among your friends.'

'Oh yes,⁴ papa. I have no fears at all for myself; and I should have no scruples of staying as late as Mrs. Weston, but on your account. I am only afraid of your sitting up for me. You will be sitting up by yourself instead of going to bed at your usual time; and the idea of that would entirely destroy my comfort. You must promise me not to sit up.'

He did,⁵ on the condition of some promises on her side; such as that, if she came home cold, she would be sure to warm herself thoroughly; if hungry,⁶ that she would take something to eat; that her own maid should sit up for her; and that Serle and the butler should see⁷ that everything was safe in the house as usual.

JANE AUSTEN.

¹ upon no account in the world, um alles in der Welt nicht. ² I would not be the means, ich möchte auf keinerlei Weise. ³ you will not mind being tired, du wirst schon ein wenig Müdigkeit ertragen; du wirst dir nichts daraus machen, wenn . . . ⁴ Oh yes, versteht sich. ⁵ he did = he did it, he promised it. ⁶ Complete the sentence. ⁷ see, nachsehen.

XCV

THE FRUIT-BASKET

(1)

Mr. Thornton went along the crowded streets mechanically, winding in and out among¹ the people, but never² seeing them.

'Why, Mr. Thornton! you're cutting me very coolly, I must say. And how is Mrs. Thornton? Brave weather this! We doctors don't like it, I can tell you.'

'I beg your pardon, Dr. Donaldson. I really didn't see you. My mother's quite well, thank you. It is a fine day, and good for the harvest, I hope. If the wheat is well got

in, we shall have a brisk trade next year, whatever you doctors have.'

'Ay, ay. Each man for himself.³ Your bad weather, and your bad times, are my good ones. When trade is bad, there's more undermining of health going on among you Milton men than you're aware of.'

'Not with me,⁴ doctor, I'm made of iron. The news of the worst bad debt I ever had, never made my pulse vary.⁵ You must go elsewhere for a patient, doctor.'

'By the way,⁶ you've recommended me a good patient, poor lady! Not to go on talking in this heartless way, I seriously believe that Mrs. Hale hasn't many weeks to live. I never had any hope of cure, as I think I told you; but I've been seeing her to-day, and I think very badly of her.'⁷

¹ in and out among, hin und her durcß. ² but never, ohne auch nur.
³ every man for himself, jeder ist sich selbst der Nächste. ⁴ not with me, daß ist nicht mein Fall. ⁵ made my pulse vary, meinen Pulsschlag gerührt.
⁶ by the way, beiläufig gesagt. ⁷ I think very badly of her, ich halte ihren Zustand für sehr gefährlich. What would be the meaning of the literal translation in German?

XCVI

(2)

Mr. Thornton was silent. The vaunted steadiness of pulse failed him for an instant.

'Can I do anything, doctor?' he asked, in an altered voice. 'You know that money is not very plentiful; are there any comforts or dainties she ought to have?'

'No,' replied the doctor, shaking his head. 'She craves for fruit—she has a constant fever on her;¹ but jargonelle pears will do as well as anything, and there are quantities [7] of them in the market.'

'You will tell me if there is anything I can do, I'm sure,' replied Mr. Thornton. 'I rely upon you.'

'Oh, never fear!² I'll not spare your purse—I know it's deep enough. I wish you would give me *carte-blanche* for all my patients, and all their wants.'

But Mr. Thornton had no general benevolence—no universal philanthropy; few even would have given him credit for³ strong affections. But he went straight to the first fruit-shop in Milton, and chose out the best bunch of purple grapes with the most delicate bloom upon them—the richest-coloured peaches—the freshest vine-leaves. They were packed into a basket, and the shopman awaited the answer to⁴ his inquiry, 'Where shall we send them to, sir?'

There was⁵ no reply. 'To Marlborough Mills, I suppose, sir?'

'No!' Mr. Thornton said. 'Give the basket to me—I'll take it.'

¹ she has a constant fever on her, sie ist immer fieberhaft. ² never fear! seien Sie unbesorgt.
³ to give some one credit for, jemandem etwas zutrauen. ⁴ answer to, Antwort auf. ⁵ there was=he received.

XCVII

(3)

It took up both his hands to carry it; and he had to pass through the busiest part of the town for feminine shopping.¹ Many a young lady of his acquaintance turned to look after him, and thought it strange to see him occupied just like a porter or an errand boy.

He went at an unusual pace, and was soon at Crampton. He went upstairs two steps at a time, and entered the drawing-room before the servant-maid could announce him, his face flushed, his eyes shining with kindly earnestness. Mrs. Hale lay on the sofa, heated with fever. Mr. Hale was reading aloud, Margaret was working on a low stool by her mother's side. Her heart fluttered, if his did not,² at this interview. But he took no notice of her—hardly of

Mr. Hale himself. He went up straight with his basket to Mrs. Hale, and said, in that subdued and gentle tone, which is so touching when used by a robust man in full health, speaking to a feeble invalid—

‘I met Dr. Donaldson, ma’am, and as he said fruit would be good for you, I have taken the liberty, the great liberty, of bringing you some that seemed to me fine.’ Mrs. Hale was excessively surprised; excessively pleased; quite in a tremble of eagerness.³ Mr. Hale, with fewer words, expressed a deeper gratitude.

‘I must go,’ said he, ‘I cannot stay. If you will forgive this liberty—my rough ways⁴—too abrupt, I fear—but I will be more gentle next time. You will allow me the pleasure of bringing you some fruit again, if I should see any that is tempting.⁵ Good-afternoon, Mr. Hale. Good-bye, ma’am.’

MRS. GASKELL.

¹ for feminine shopping, wo die Damen ihre Einkäufe machten.

² Supply: beat. ³ and trembled for joy. ⁴ ways, das Wesen, Benehmen. ⁵ that is tempting, das den Appetit reizt.

XCVIII

A RUINED MERCHANT

Mr. Sedley's speculations (in life) subsequent to¹ his bankruptcy did not by any means retrieve the broken old gentleman's fortune. He tried to be² a wine-merchant, a coal-merchant, a commission lottery agent, etc., etc. He sent round prospectuses to his friends whenever he took a new trade, and ordered a new brass-plate for the door, and talked pompously about making [32] his fortune still. But fortune never came back to the feeble and stricken old man. One by one his friends dropped off, and were weary [21]³ of buying dear coals and bad wine from him; and there was only his wife in all the world who fancied, when he tottered off to the

city of a morning, that he was still doing any business there. At evening he crawled slowly back; and he used to go of . . . nights to a little club at a tavern, where he disposed of the finances of the nation. It was wonderful to hear him talk about millions, and agios, and discounts, and what Rothschild was doing, and Baring Brothers. He talked of such vast sums that the gentlemen of the club (the apothecary, the undertaker, the carpenter and builder) respected the old gentleman. 'I was better off once,⁴ sir,' he did not fail to tell everybody who 'used⁵ the room.'

W. M. THACKERAY.

¹ subsequent to, nach. ² he tried to be . . . , er versuchte es mit dem — Gandel. ³ were weary, wurden es müde. ⁴ I was better off once, ich bin einst in bessern Umständen gewesen, es ging mir früher besser.
⁵ used = frequented.

XCIX

GEORGE LEAVES HIS MOTHER

(1)

She put on her bonnet, scarcely knowing what she did, and went out to walk in the lanes by which George used to come back from school, and where she was in the habit of going¹ on his return to meet the boy. It was May, a half-holiday. The leaves were all coming out, the weather was brilliant; the boy came running to her flushed with health, singing, his bundle of school-books hanging by a thong. There he was. Both her arms were² round him. No, it was impossible. They could not be going to part. 'What is the matter,³ mother?' said he, 'you look very pale.'

'Nothing, my child,' she said, and stooped down and kissed him.

That night Amelia made the boy read the story of Samuel to her,⁴ and how Hannah, his mother, having weaned him, brought him to Eli, the High-Priest, to minister before the

Lord. And then he read how Samuel's mother made him a little coat, and brought it to him from year to year⁵ when she came up to offer the yearly sacrifice. And then, in her sweet simple way, George's mother made commentaries to the boy upon this affecting story. How Hannah, though she loved her son so much, yet gave him up because of her vow. And how she must always have thought of him as she sat at home, far away, making the little coat; and Samuel, she was sure, never forgot his mother.

¹ was in the habit of going, gewöhntlich. ² she threw . . . or: she held him . . . ³ what is the matter, was ist geschehen? was ist los (familiar)? ⁴ made the boy read to her, ließ den Knaben vorlesen. ⁵ from year to year, alljährlich.

C

(2)

George was kept from school¹ the next day, and saw his aunt. Amelia left them alone together, and went to her room. She was trying the separation²—as that poor gentle Lady Jane Grey felt the edge of the axe that was to come down and sever her slender life. Days were passed in parleys visits, preparations. The widow broke³ the matter to Georgy with great caution; she looked to see him very much affected by the intelligence. He was rather elated than otherwise, and the poor woman turned sadly away. He bragged about the news that day to the boys at school; told them how he was going to live with his grandpapa, his father's father, not the one who comes here sometimes; and that he would be very rich, and have a carriage, and a pony, and go to a much finer school, and when he was rich he would buy Leader's pencil-case, and pay the tart woman. The boy was the image of his father, as his fond mother thought.

At last the day came, the carriage drove up, the little

humble packets containing tokens of love and remembrance were ready and disposed in the hall long since—George was in his new suit, for which the tailor had come previously to measure him. He had sprung up with the sun and put on the new clothes; his mother hearing [35] him from the room close by, in which she had been lying, in speechless grief and watching.

¹ was kept from school, durfte nicht in die Schule gehen. ² how she would feel the separation. ³ to break to, mittheilen, entbeden.

CI

(3)

Days before she had been making preparations for the end; purchasing [35] little stores for the boy's use; marking his books and linen, talking with him and preparing him for the change—fondly fancying¹ that he needed preparation.

So that² he had change, what cared he? He was longing for it. By a thousand eager declarations as to what [24] he would do, when he went to live with his grandfather, he had shown the poor widow how little the idea of parting had cast him down. 'He would come and see his mamma often on the pony,' he said, 'he would come and fetch her in the carriage; they would drive in the Park, and she would have everything she wanted.' The poor mother was fain³ to content herself with these selfish demonstrations of attachment, and tried to convince herself how sincerely her son loved her. All children were so; a little anxious for novelty, and—no, not selfish, but self-willed. Her child must have his enjoyments and ambition in the world. She herself [43], by her own selfishness and imprudent love for him, had denied him his just rights and pleasures hitherto.

¹ fondly fancying, in dem gärtlichen Wahne. ² so that, wenn er nur, so lange er nur. ³ was fain to, mußte wohl, mußte noch.

CII

(4)

So poor Amelia had been getting ready in silent misery for her son's departure, and had passed many (and many) a long solitary hour in making preparations for the end. George stood by his mother, waiting [35] her arrangements without the least concern. Tears had fallen into his boxes, passages had been scored in his favourite books, old toys, relics, treasures had been hoarded away for him, and packed with strange neatness and care—and of all these things the boy took no note. The child goes away smiling as the mother breaks her [23] heart.

A few days are passed, and the great event of Amelia's life is consummated. The child is sacrificed and offered up to fate; and the widow is quite alone.

The boy comes to see her often, to be sure.¹ He rides on a pony with the coachman behind him. She sees him, but he is not her boy any more. Why,² he rides to see the boys at the little school, too, and to show off before them his new wealth and splendour. In two days he has adopted a slight imperious air and patronising manner. He was born to command, his mother thinks, as his father was before him.

W. M. THACKERAY.

¹ to be sure, afterdings. ² why, ei, nun.

CIII

AN UNLUCKY DIPLOMATIST

My Lord Gaunt could not only read, but write pretty correctly. He spoke French with considerable fluency, and was one of the finest waltzers¹ in Europe. With these talents, and his interest at home, there was little doubt that his lordship would rise to the highest dignities in his profession. The lady, his wife, felt that courts were her sphere;

and her wealth enabled her to receive splendidly in those continental towns whither her husband's diplomatic duties led him. There was talk of² appointing him minister, and bets were laid at the Travellers'³ that he would be ambassador ere long, when of a sudden, rumours arrived of the secretary's extraordinary behaviour. At a grand diplomatic dinner given by his chief, he had started up, and declared that a *pâté de foie gras* was poisoned. He went to a ball at the hotel of the Bavarian envoy, with his head shaved, and dressed as a Capuchin friar. It was not a masked ball, as some folks wanted to persuade you.⁴ It was something queer, people whispered. His grandfather was so.⁵ It was in the family.

Lord George gave up his post on the European continent, and was gazetted to Brazil. But people knew better; he never returned from that Brazil expedition—never died there—never lived there—never was there at all. 'Brazil,' said one gossip to another, 'is in St. John's Wood. Rio Janeiro is a cottage surrounded by four walls; and George Gaunt is accredited to a keeper, who has invested him with the order of the Strait-Waistcoat.'

W. M. THACKERAY.

¹ waltzer, Walzertänzer. Why not Walzer? ² there was talk of,
man rebete schon davon. ³ at the Travellers', im Klub der Wanderer.
⁴ you, einen, die Leute. ⁵ so, auch so.

CIV

A FIRST DINNER-PARTY.

One of our first feats in the housekeeping way was a little dinner to¹ Traddles. I met him in town, and asked him to walk out with me that afternoon. He readily consenting [33], I wrote to Dora, saying [35] I would bring him home.² It was pleasant weather, and on the road we made my domestic happiness our theme of conversation. Traddles was very full of it; and said that, picturing³ himself with such a

home, and Sophy waiting and preparing for him, he could think of nothing wanting to complete his bliss.

I could not have wished for a prettier little wife at the opposite end of the table, but I certainly could have wished, when we sat down, for a little more room. I did not know how it was, but though there were only two of us, we were at once always cramped for room, and yet had always room enough to lose everything in. There was another thing I could have wished, namely, that Jip (the dog) had never been encouraged to walk about the table-cloth during dinner. I began to think there was something disorderly in his being there ⁴ at all, even if he had not been in the habit of putting his foot in the salt or the melted-butter. On this occasion he seemed to think he was introduced expressly to keep Traddles at bay; and he barked at my old friend, and made short runs at ⁵ his plate, with such undaunted pertinacity, that he may be said to have engrossed the conversation. However, as I knew how tender-hearted my dear Dora was, and how sensitive she would be to any slight upon her favourite, I hinted no objection.⁶

CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ to, für, or: which we gave. ² bring home, mitbringen. See P. Sch. G. Gr., Lesson 48, p. 195. ³ when he pictured. ⁴ in his being there, in seinem Aufenthalt daselbst. ⁵ short runs at, kleine Attaquen auf. ⁶ I hinted no objection, so ließ ich keinen Einwand laut werden.

CV

HOUSEKEEPING—ACCOUNTS

Dora told me, shortly afterwards, that she was going to be a wonderful housekeeper. Accordingly, she polished the tablets, pointed the pencil, bought an immense account-book, carefully stitched up with a needle and thread all the leaves of the cookery-book which Jip had torn, and made quite a desperate little attempt 'to be good,' as she called it. But the figures had the old obstinate propensity—they *would not*

add up.¹ When she had entered two or three laborious items in the account-book, Jip would [38] walk over the page, wagging his tail, and smear them all out. Her own little right-hand² middle finger got steeped to the very bone in ink; and I think that was the only decided result obtained.³

Sometimes, of an evening, when I was at home and at work, I would [38] lay down my pen, and watch my child-wife trying to be good. First of all, she would bring out the immense account-book, and lay it down upon the table, with a deep sigh. Then she would open it at the place where Jip had made it illegible last night, and call up Jip to look at his misdeeds. This would occasion a diversion in Jip's favour, and some inking of his nose, perhaps, as a penalty. Then she would tell Jip to lie down on the table instantly 'like a lion'—which⁴ was one of his tricks—and, if he were in an obedient humour, he would obey. Then she would take up a pen, and begin to write, and find a hair in it. Then she would take up another pen, and begin to write, and find that it spluttered. And then she would give it up as a bad job, and put the account-book away, after pretending to crush the lion with it.

CHARLES DICKENS.

¹ they would not add up, sie wollten sich nicht zusammenzählen lassen.

² of the right hand.

³ which she obtained.

⁴ which or what, referring to a whole sentence, is was.

CVI

A THEORETICAL AGRICULTURIST

(1)

Young Triptolemus, having received [43] such instructions as the curate could give him, was in due time sent to Saint Andrews to prosecute his studies. He went, it is true, but with an eye turned back with sad remembrances on his father's plough, his father's pancakes, and his father's ale, for which the small beer of the college furnished a poor

substitute. Yet he advanced in learning, being found,¹ however, to show a particular favour to such authors of antiquity as had made the improvement of the soil the object of their researches. He endured² the *Bucolics* of Virgil, the *Georgics* he had by heart. Cato, the Roman Censor, was his favourite among classical heroes and philosophers, not on account of the strictness of his morals, but because of his treatise *De Re Rustica*. He thought well³ of Palladius, and of Terentius Varro, but Columella was his pocket-companion. To these ancient worthies he added the more modern Tusser, Hartlib, and other writers on economics, not forgetting the Shepherd of Salisbury Plain, and such of the better-informed Philomaths, who, instead of loading their almanacs with vain predictions of political events, pretended to see⁴ what seeds would grow, and what would not, and direct the attention of their readers to that course of cultivation from which the production of good crops may be safely predicted; modest sages, in fine, who, careless of⁵ the rise and downfall of empires, content themselves with pointing out the fit seasons to reap and sow, with a fair guess at the weather which each month will be likely to present; as, for example, that if Heaven pleases, we shall have snow in January.

¹ Begin a new sentence: man fand jedoch, daß er. ² he endured, er mochte leiden. ³ he thought well, er hielt viel von. ⁴ pretended to see, vorgaben zu wissen. ⁵ careless of, ohne sich um — zu kümmern.

CVII

(2)

It might have been supposed that our Triptolemus, summoned to carry into practice what he had so fondly studied in theory, would have been, to use a simile which *he* would have thought lively, like a cow entering a clover-park.¹ Alas, mistaken thoughts, and deceitful hopes of mankind!

A laughing philosopher, the Democritus of our day, once in a lecture compared human life to a table (pierced) [48] with a

number of holes, each of which has a pin made exactly to fit it, but which ² pins being stuck in hastily, and without selection, chance leads inevitably to the most awkward mistakes. 'For, how often do we see,' the orator pathetically concludes — 'how often, I say, do we see the round man stuck in the three-cornered hole.' This new illustration of the vagaries of fortune set every one present into convulsions of laughter,³ excepting one fat alderman, who seemed to make the case his own, and insisted that it was no laughing matter. To take up the simile, however, which is an excellent one, it is plain that Triptolemus Yellowley had been shaken out of the bag at least a hundred years too soon. If he had come on the stage in our own time, he could not have missed ⁴ to have held the office of vice-president of some eminent agricultural society, and to have transacted all the business thereof under the auspices of some noble duke or lord, who, as the matter might happen, either knew, or did not know, the difference between a horse and a cart, and a cart-horse. He could not have missed ⁵ such preferment, for he was exceedingly learned in all those particulars, which, being of no consequence in actual practice, go, of course, a great way⁶ to constitute the character of a connoisseur in any art, but especially in agriculture.

¹ Like a cow in a clover-park, wie eine Kuh im Klee-feld; the more usual expression in German is wie der Hase im Kohl. ² Say: but as these pins were stuck in. ³ convulsive laughter. ⁴ could not have missed, so würde er ohne Zweifel. ⁵ to miss, verfehlen; or, say: eine solche Beförderung hätte ihm nicht entgehen können. ⁶ to go a great way, bedeutend zu etwas beitragen.

CVIII

(3)

But, alas! Triptolemus Yellowley had, as we already have hinted, come into the world at least a century too soon: for,

instead of sitting in an arm-chair, with a hammer in his [23] hand, and a bumper of port before him, giving forth the toast—‘To breeding in all its branches,’¹ his father planted him betwixt the stilts of a plough, and invited him to guide the oxen, on whose beauties he would, in our day, have descanted. Old Jasper complained, that although no one talked so well of wheat and rape, fallow and lea, as his learned son, yet, added he, ‘nought thrives wi’ un, nought thrives wi’ un.’

Matters² would have soon been brought to a close with Triptolemus in the present day. He would have got a bank-credit, manœuvred with wind-bills,³ dashed out upon a large scale,⁴ and soon have seen his crop and stock sequestered by the sheriff; but in those days a man could not ruin himself so easily. The whole Scottish tenantry stood upon the same level flat of poverty, so that it was extremely difficult to find any vantage ground, by climbing up to which a man might have an opportunity of actually breaking his neck with some éclat. They were pretty much in the situation of people who, being totally without credit, may indeed suffer from indigence, but cannot possibly become bankrupt.

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

¹ breeding in all its branches, die Viehzucht in allen ihren Zweigen.

² matters, es, die Sache.

³ wind-bills, Kellervechsel (slang), Wechsel ins Blaue hinein.

⁴ dashed out upon a large scale, flott und auf großem Fuße gelebt haben.

CIX

THE SHETLAND FISHERMEN

The ling or white fishery is the principal employment of the natives of Zetland, and was formerly that¹ upon which the gentry chiefly depended for their income, and the poor for their subsistence. The fishing season, is, therefore, like the harvest of an agricultural country, the busiest and most important, as well as the most animating period of the year.

The fishermen of each district assemble at particular stations, with their boats and crews, and erect upon the shore small huts, composed of shingle, and covered with turf, for their temporary lodging, and skeos, or drying-houses [6] for fish ; so that the lonely beach at once assumes the appearance of an Indian town. The banks to which they repair for the Haaf fishing are often many miles distant from the station where the fish is dried ; so that they are always twenty or thirty hours absent, frequently longer ; and under unfavourable circumstances of wind and tide, they remain at sea, with a very small stock of provisions, and in a boat of a construction which seems extremely slender,² for two or three days, and³ are sometimes heard of no more. The departure of the fishers, therefore, on this occupation, has in it a character of danger and of suffering, which renders it dignified,⁴ and the anxiety of the females who remain on the beach, watching [35] the departure of the lessening⁵ boat, or anxiously looking for its return, gives pathos to the scene.

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

¹ that upon which, der Erwerbszweig, von dem . . . abhängen. Compare § 24. ² in einem augenscheinlich sehr leicht gebauten Boote. . . ³ ja zuweilen hört man. ⁴ to dignify, Bedeutung verleihen. ⁵ lessening, use here allmählich verschwindend.

CX

ONLY A WEED

(1)

It was a bright winter's day ;¹ and I sat upon a garden-seat in a sheltered nook towards the south,² having come out³ of my study to enjoy the warmth, like a fly that has left some snug crevice to stretch his legs upon the unwontedly sunny pane in December. My little daughter (she is a very little thing, about four years old) came running up to me,

and when she had arrived at my knees, held up a straggling but pretty weed. Then, with great earnestness, and as if fresh from ⁴ some controversy on the subject, she exclaimed :

‘Is this a weed, papa—is this a weed?’

‘Yes, a weed,’ I replied.

With a look of disappointment she moved off to the one ⁵ she loved best amongst us; and, asking the same question, received the same answer.

‘But it has flowers,’ the child replied.

‘That does not signify,⁶ it is a weed,’ was the inexorable reply.

Presently, after a moment’s consideration, the child ran off again, and meeting the gardener just near my nook, though out of sight from where I sat,⁷ she coaxingly addressed him :

‘Nicholas dear, is this a weed?’

‘Yes, miss; they call it “Shepherd’s Purse.”’

¹ Use a compound. ² towards the south,—here the addition of a participle is indispensable, gegen den Süden zu gelegen, südlich gelegen.

³ Begin a new sentence: I had left . . . ⁴ fresh from,—this is an instructive example. The literal translation frisch von will do, but to express the full meaning, I should say: noch aufgeregt, als ob sie soeben einen Streit über den Gegenstand gehabt hätte.

⁵ the one,—the context suggests the mother, therefore use the feminine. ⁶ That does not signify, das macht nichts aus, das hat nichts zu bedeuten. ⁷ obgleich ich sie von meinem Sitze aus nicht sehen konnte.

CXI

(2)

A pause ensued. I thought the child was now fairly silenced by authority, when all at once the little voice began again :

‘Will you plant it in my garden, Nicholas dear? Do, plant it ¹ in my garden.’

There was no ² resisting the anxious entreaty of the child, and the man and child moved off together to plant the weed

in one of those plots of ground which the children walk about upon a good deal, and put branches of trees in and grown-up flowers, and then examine the roots (a system as encouraging as other systems of education I could name), and which they call their gardens.

But the child's words, 'Will you plant it in my garden?' remained upon my mind. I shall not say what I thought of, for it is not good to be always communicative.

SIR ARTHUR HELPS.

¹ Do, plant it, bitte, pflanze es.
unmöglich . . . zu widerstehen.

² There was no resisting, es war

CXII

THE ART OF COMING TO AN END

Almost all human affairs are tedious. Everything is¹ too long. Visits, dinners, concerts, plays, speeches, essays, sermons, are too long. Pleasure and business labour equally under this defect, or, as I should rather say, this fatal superabundance.

It must not be supposed [28 a] that tiresomeness belongs to virtue alone. Few people are more pedantic and tiresome than the vicious. But let us trace this lengthiness, not only in the results of men's works, but in their modes of operation.

Which of all defects has been the one most fatal to a good style? The not knowing² when to come to an end. Take³ some inferior writer's works. Dismiss nearly all the adjectives; when he uses many substantives, either in juxtaposition, or in some dependence on each other, reduce him to one; do the same thing with the verbs; finally, omit all the adverbs; and you will, perhaps, find out that this writer had something to say which you might never have discovered if you had not removed the superfluous words.

It is a grand thing⁴ for a man to know when he has done his work.

SIR ARTHUR HELPS.

¹ is, dauert. ² The not knowing, daß der Verfasser nicht weiß, or nicht zu wissen wenn. ³ either nehmen wir, lassen Sie uns nehmen, or man nehme. Throughout this piece be careful in the use of the pronouns. ⁴ a grand thing, etwas Großes.

CXIII

THE INFLUENCE OF FICTION

The influence of works of fiction is unbounded. Even the minds [7] of well-informed people are often more stored with¹ characters from acknowledged fiction than from history, or biography, or the real life around them.² We dispute about these characters as if they were realities. Their experience is our experience; we adopt their feelings, and imitate their acts. Shakespeare's historical plays were the only history of the Duke of Marlborough. Thousands of Greeks acted under the influence of what Achilles or Ulysses did, in Homer. The poet sings of the deeds that shall be. He imagines the past; he forms the future.

Yet how surpassingly interesting is life, when we get an insight into it. Occasionally a great genius lifts up the veil of history, and we see men who once really were alive, who did not always live only in history. Or, amidst the dreary pages of battles, levies, sieges, and the sleep-inducing weavings of political combinations, we come across some spoken or written words of the great actors of the time, and are³ then fascinated by the life and reality of these things.

SIR ARTHUR HELPS.

¹ more stored with, reicher an, besser versehen mit. ² around them, daß sie umgiebt. The antiquated pedantic construction would be, daß sie umgebenden wirklichen Lebens, der sie umgebenden Wirklichkeit; but such a rendering would at the present day be intolerable. ³ and are, und fühlen uns.

CXIV

THE CHARACTERS OF BOYS AND MEN

I agree with Hazlitt, who was a very shrewd thinker, that men's characters [7] do not alter very much after their earliest years. The boys that I knew well at school are the same boys now [41]. The beard was rudimentary¹ then; it is fully developed now. That is the chief difference. One boy was mean at playing at marbles; and he is mean now at playing for high office and great dignities. Another was profuse with bull's-eyes and toffy;² a large experience of life [6] has not tamed his liberality; and, when the poor fellow has nothing else to give, he offers you his best wishes, and is ready to go anywhere or do anything for you. Milverton took me aside in the cricket-field at³ our school to prove to me that the repeal of the Corn Laws must be carried, and that the British aristocracy would suffer a great deal if they made too prolonged a resistance. He took me aside this morning to pour out to me his wailings about the increase of taxation. In neither case⁴ was I as much agitated by what he told me as I ought to have been. We preserve our characters exactly.

SIR ARTHUR HELPS.

¹ rudimentary, unausgebildet, fing an zu sprossen. ² bull's-eyes and toffy—delicacies not known in Germany; say, Marzipan und Zuckerkand.

³ at=of. ⁴ in neither case, weder in dem einem noch in dem andern Falle, in keinem von beiden Fällen.

CXV

THE INFLUENCE OF LIGHT

The proverb tells us¹ that we should lie down with the lamb. We² could never quite understand the philosophy³ of this arrangement, or the wisdom of our ancestors in sending us [33] for instruction⁴ to these woolly bedfellows. A sheep, when it is dark, has nothing to do but to shut his silly

eyes, and sleep if he can. Man discovered candles! We love to read, talk, sit silent, eat, drink, sleep, by candle-light. They⁵ are everybody's sun and moon. This is our peculiar and household planet. Wanting it, what savage, unsocial nights must our ancestors have spent, wintering in caves and unilluminated fastnesses. They must have lain about and grumbled at one another in the dark. We wonder how they saw to pick up a pin, if they had any. How did they sup? Who, even in these civilised times, has never experienced this, when at some economic table he has commenced dining after dusk, and waited for the flavour till the lights came in.⁶ Can you tell pork⁷ from veal in the dark? Take away the candle from the smoking man [6]; by the glimmering of ashes, he knows that he is still smoking, but he knows it only by an inference; till the restored light, coming in aid of the olfactories, reveals to both senses the full aroma.

CHARLES LAMB.

¹ Throughout this exercise pay special attention to the rendering of the pronouns, which present many pitfalls. Tells us, *heißt uns, sagt uns, daß wir uns*, would be objectionable on account of the repetition of *uns*. You may leave out the first *uns* after *sagt*, or drop *that* and change the indirect statement into a direct statement: *das Sprichwort sagt: Sage gute Nacht mit den Lämmern, geh' schlafen mit den Schafen.*

² The editorial *we* is in an essay better replaced in German by the singular *I*. ³ the philosophy, *der Sinn, die Bedeutung*.

⁴ for instruction, *in die Lehre*. ⁵ They,—in German the pronoun must agree with *Herzenglück*, or you may repeat the substantive in the plural: *Herzen (Glückster)*. ⁶ came in = were brought in. ⁷ to tell from, *unterscheiden*.

CXVI

THE PROGRESS OF MEDICINE

The rapidly increasing knowledge of medicine¹ in England in the seventeenth century must have produced remarkable effects. The diminution of pain is the least of the benefits derived² from the soothing hand of the physician. His

influence on the progress of civilisation consists in³ being enabled to lengthen life. During⁴ fifty years in England the expectation of life was doubled [28 b]. By this means men were enabled to perfect their discoveries⁵ with only one-half the risk, before incurred, of being interrupted by death. It may be safely laid down that, supposing⁶ all other things equal, the greatest discoveries will be made by the most long-lived people. In pure science, the results which a mighty genius has achieved may indeed be embodied by him in a material form and handed down to posterity as a foundation on which future philosophers may build. But the experience, the fine and subtle sagacity, the delicate perception of analogies and differences, these⁷ are the work of time as well as of genius, and these⁷ are the qualities which cannot be embodied, which cannot be bequeathed. It is in this point of view that medicine, by lengthening the average duration of life, increases the general fund of national wisdom.

HENRY THOMAS BUCKLE.

¹ The rapidly increasing knowledge of medicine, die schnellen Fortschritte der Arzneiwissenschaft. ² to derive, sich herleiten. ³ in, darin daß. ⁴ during, in Zeit von. ⁵ Do not place *to perfect* at the end of the period, after *death*, which would be most barbarous. ⁶ supposing, the usual translation is angenommen daß. But then this daß clashes with the daß of *it may be laid down that*. To avoid this, say: alle übrigen Umstände als gleich angenommen, or, Gleichheit aller übrigen Umstände angenommen. ⁷ these, what number in German?

CXVII

THE SIGN OF THE CROSS

(1)

An instrument of the tortures that were inflicted only on slaves and strangers,¹ became an object of horror in the eyes of a Roman citizen, and the ideas of guilt, of pain, and ignominy, were closely united with the idea of the cross.

The piety, rather than the humanity, of Constantine, soon abolished in his dominions the punishment which the Saviour of mankind had condescended to suffer, but the emperor had already learned to despise the prejudices of his education, and of his people, before he could erect in the midst of Rome his own statue, having a cross in its right hand, with an inscription, which referred the victory of his arms, and the deliverance of Rome, to the virtue of that salutary sign,² the true symbol of force and courage. The same symbol sanctified the arms of the soldiers of Constantine; the cross glittered on their helmets, was engraved on their shields, was interwoven³ into their banners. But the principal standard which displayed⁴ the triumph of the cross was styled the Labarum, an obscure though celebrated name, which has been vainly derived from almost all the languages of the world. It is described as a long pike intersected by a transversal beam.⁵ The silken veil which hung down from the beam was curiously⁶ enwrought⁷ with the images of the reigning monarch and his children. The summit of the pike supported a crown of gold which enclosed the mysterious monogram, at once expressive⁸ of the figure of the cross, and the initial letters of the name of Christ.

¹ If you preserve the English construction, the *wurde* of the relative clause will clash with the *wurde* of the principal sentence; therefore contract the relative clause: *ein Marterwerkzeug, ausschließlich zur Qual von Sklaven und Ausländern in Anwendung gebracht, wurde . . .* ² salutary sign, Zeichen des Heils. ³ interwoven, eingewoben. ⁴ to display, entfalten, zur Schau tragen. ⁵ a transversal beam, ein Querbalken. ⁶ curiously, here kunstvoll. ⁷ enwrought, gestickt, eingewirft. ⁸ Turn into a relative sentence, and use a verb instead of the adjective.

CXVIII

(2)

The safety of the Labarum was entrusted to fifty guards,¹ of approved valour and fidelity; their station² was marked

by honour and emoluments, and some fortunate accidents soon introduced³ an opinion, that as long as the guards of the Labarum were engaged in the execution of their office, they were secure and invulnerable amidst the darts of the enemy. In the second civil war, Licinius felt and dreaded the power of this consecrated banner, the sight of which, in the distress of battle, animated the soldiers of Constantine with an invincible enthusiasm, and scattered terror and dismay through the ranks of the adverse legions. The Christian emperors who respected the example of Constantine displayed in all their military expeditions the standard of the cross; but, when the degenerate successors of Theodosius had ceased to appear in person⁴ at the head⁵ of their armies, the Labarum was deposited as a venerable but useless relic in the palace of Constantinople. Its honours⁶ are still preserved on the medals of the Flavian family. Their grateful devotion has placed the monogram of Christ⁷ in the midst of the ensigns of Rome, and there is still extant a medal of the Emperor Constantius, where the standard of the Labarum is accompanied with these memorable words: 'By⁸ this sign shalt thou conquer.'

EDWARD GIBBON.

¹ the guard, die Garde, der Wächter. ² the station, der Stand, die Würde. ³ to introduce, hervorbringen, anbringen. ⁴ in person, in höchst eigener Person, persönlich. ⁵ at the head of the army, an der Spitze der Armee. ⁶ its honours, seine Verehrung. ⁷ The name of Christ is still declined according to the Latin declension, *Christi, o, um, e*, and so *Jesus, u, um*; but the rest of biblical names are now treated like German names, and the cases expressed by position or the article. The revised Lutheran version has many examples of this, although the Latin genitive is still used in *Evangelium Matthäi, Marci, Lucæ, Johannis*, etc. Professor Weizsäcker, in his translation of the New Testament, throughout discards the terminations of the Latin declensions. ⁸ by, in with the dative.

CXIX

ON HEREDITARY MONARCHY

Of the various forms of government, which have prevailed¹ in the world, an hereditary monarchy seems to present the fairest scope² for ridicule. Is it possible to relate, without an indignant smile, that, on the father's decease, the property of a nation,³ like that of a drove of oxen, descends to his infant son, as yet unknown to mankind and to himself, and that the bravest warriors and the wisest statesmen, relinquishing⁴ their natural right to empire, approach the royal cradle with bended⁵ knees and protestations of inviolable fidelity? Satire and declamation may paint these obvious topics in the most dazzling colours, but our more serious thoughts⁶ will respect a useful prejudice, that establishes a rule of succession,⁷ independent of the passions of mankind, and we shall cheerfully acquiesce in⁸ any expedient which deprives the multitude of the dangerous, and indeed the ideal, power of giving themselves a master.

In the cool shade of retirement, we may easily devise imaginary forms of government, in which the sceptre shall be constantly bestowed on the most worthy, by the free and uncorrupt suffrage of the whole community. Experience overturns these airy fabrics, and teaches us, that, in a large society, the election of a monarch can never devolve⁹ to the wisest, or to the most numerous, part of the people. The army is the only order of men sufficiently united to concur in the same sentiments, and powerful enough to impose them on the rest of their fellow-citizens. EDWARD GIBBON.

¹ to prevail, herrschen, vorherrschen. ² to give the fairest scope for ridicule, dem Spott den meisten Spielraum geben, die schönste Gelegenheit geben. ³ the property of a nation, der Besitz einer Nation. ⁴ Use the finite verb or retain the participle present. ⁵ bended, here the old form gebeugt, instead of gebogen. ⁶ Our more serious thoughts, instead of the literal translation, I should prefer: nach ernstlicherem Nachdenken werden wir . . . ⁷ A rule of succession, eine geregelte Thronfolge. ⁸ to acquiesce in, sich fügen. ⁹ to devolve to, anvertrauen with the dative.

CXX

GERMAN MERCHANTS IN ENGLAND

The trade of England had anciently¹ been carried on altogether by foreigners, chiefly the inhabitants of the Hanse-towns, or Easterlings, as they were called; and in order to encourage these merchants to settle in England, they had been erected into a corporation by Henry III., had obtained a patent, were endowed with privileges, and were exempted from several heavy duties² paid by other aliens. So ignorant were the English of commerce, that this company, usually denominated the merchants of the Stil-yard, engrossed³ even down to the reign of Edward VI. almost the whole foreign trade of the kingdom, and, as they naturally employed the shipping of their own country, the navigation of England was also in a very languishing condition. It was therefore thought proper by the council to seek pretences for annulling the privileges of this corporation, privileges which put them nearly on an equal footing with Englishmen in the duties which they paid, and, as such patents were during that age granted by the absolute power of the King, men were the less surprised to find them revoked by the same authority. Several remonstrances were made against this innovation by Lübeck, Hamburgh, and other Hanse-towns, but the council persevered in their resolution, and the good effects of it soon became visible to the nation, and a spirit of industry began to appear in the kingdom.

DAVID HUME.

¹ anciently, in alten Zeiten, vor Alters. ² duty (to be performed), die Pflicht; (to be paid), die Abgabe, die Steuer. ³ to engross the trade, den Handel an sich reißen, in Händen haben.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

THE genitive singular and the nominative plural of nouns are indicated thus :—

der Garten, -s, " = der Garten, des Gartens, die Gärten.

das Haus, -es, "-er, = das Haus, des Hauses, die Häuser.

der Spaten, -s, —, = der Spaten, des Spatens, die Spaten.

English substantives are marked by the article *the*, and verbs by the preposition *to*, thus :—

dream, *the*, der Traum.

dream, *to*, träumen.

v. v., weak verb; *str. v.*, strong verb; *sep.*, separable; *insep.*, inseparable.

The weak verbs are specially marked only when there is a danger of the student mistaking them for strong verbs.

A

a, an, ein, eine, ein

abide, *to*, vertragen, *str. v. insep.*

ability, *the*, die Fähigkeit, *pl. -en*

able, fähig, begabt, tüchtig

abolish, *to*, abschaffen

abound, *to*, voll von etwas sein,
reich an etwas sein

about, etwa, ungefähr, um, in Be-
treff; *to be* —, im Begriff sein,
wollen, eben wollen

above, über, besonders; — all, vor
allen

abridge, *to*, abkürzen; — labour,
die Arbeit erleichtern

abroad, draußen, außer dem Hause;
from —, aus dem Ausland

abrupt, scharf

absence, *the*, die Abwesenheit; —
of mind, die Zerstreuung

absentee, *the*, der abwesende Grund-
besitzer, -s, —

absenteeism, abwesende Grund-
besitzer, Abwesenheit des Grund-
besitzers von seinem Gute

absolute, unumschränkt

absolutely, ganz, unbedingt

absolve, *to*, freisprechen, *str. v. sep.*

abundantly, reichlich

academy, *the*, die Akademie, *pl. -en*;
die Schule, *pl. -n*

accept, to, annehmen, *str. v. sep.*
 acceptable, angenehm
 access, the, der Zutritt, -s
 accident, the, der Zufall, -s, -e
 accidental, zufällig
 accolade, to give the, jemandem
 umarmen, den Ritterschlag geben
 accommodation, the, die Einrich-
 tung, *pl. -en*; das Unterkommen,
 die Versorgung, die Bequemlichkeit,
pl. -en
 accompany, to, begleiten
 accomplish, to, vollenden
 according to, nach
 account, the, der Bericht, -es, -e;
 die Rechnung, *pl. -en*; household
 —, die Wirtschaftsrechnung
 account-book, the, das Rechnungsbuch, -s, -er; on — of, halben,
 wegen
 accredit, to, akkreditieren
 accumulation, the, die Anhäufung
 accusation, the, die Anklage, *pl. -n*
 accustom, gewöhnen
 accustomed, gewohnt, gewöhnlich
 achieve, to, erringen, *str. v.*, ge-
 winnen, *str. v.*
 acquaintance, the, die Bekanntschaft,
pl. -en
 acquiescence, the, die Einwilligung
 acquire, to, erlangen, kriegen
 act, to, handeln, wirken; — a play,
 ein Stück spielen; — as a check,
 kontrollieren
 active, thätig
 activity, the, die Thätigkeit; indus-
 trial —, die Gewerthätigkeit
 actor, the (in a play), der Schau-
 spieler; (in history) der Mann
 der That, der Held
 actual, wirklich, gegenwärtig
 acute, heftig, aufregend

add, to, vergrößern, hinzufügen, ver-
 mehrern; — up, zusammenzählen
 address, to, anreden, sich an jeman-
 den wenden
 adequate, hinreichend; to be —,
 hinreichen
 adhere, to, nachkommen, *str. v. sep.*;
 sich an eine Sache halten, *str. v.*
 adjective, the, das Adjektiv, -s, -e;
 das Eigenschaftswort, -es, -er
 administration the, die Verwaltung,
pl. -en; die Regierung, *pl. -en*
 admirable, ausgezeichnet, bewun-
 dernswert
 admiration, the, die Bewunderung
 admit, to, zulassen, *str. v. sep.*;
 Zutritt gestatten
 adopt, to, annehmen, *str. v. sep.*;
 sich aneignen, *v. v. sep.*
 adore, to, anbeten, *sep. w. v.*; ver-
 göttern, *insep. w. v.*
 advance, to, vorrücken, *sep. w. v.*;
 Fortschritte machen
 advantage, the, der Vorteil, -s, -e;
 der Vorzug, -s, -e
 adventure, the, das Abenteuer, -s, —
 adventurer, the, der Abenteuerer,
 -s, —
 adverb, the, das Adverb, -s, -ien;
 das Umstandswort, -es, -er
 adverse, feindlich
 advice, the, der Rat, -s, *pl. Rat-*
schläge
 affect, to, beeinflussen, bewegen
 affected, betrußt, gerührt, gestimmt,
 gesinnt
 affecting, rührend
 affection, the, die Liebe, die Zuneig-
 ung, *pl. -en*, das Gefühl, -s, -e
 afford, to, erschwingen, *st. v.*, im Stande
 sein
 afraid, to be, sich fürchten

Africa, Afrika

after, nach

afternoon, the, der Nachmittag, -s, -e

afterwards, nachher

against, gegen

age, the, das Alter, -s, —; das
Zeitalter

agent, the, der Agent, -en, -en

agio, das Agio, -s

agitate, to, erschüttern, erregen

ago, vor (precedes the *subst.*)

agree, to, übereinstimmen, *v. v. sep.*;
(of food) jemandem gut bekommen,
str. v. insep.

agreement, the, die Übereinkunft,
pl. -e

agricultural country, an, ein
ackerbaureichendes Land; ein Land,
wo Ackerbau getrieben wird

agricultural society, the, die Acker-
baugesellschaft, *pl.* -en

agriculture, the, der Ackerbau

aid, the, die Hilfe

air, the, die Luft, *pl.* -e; castle in
the —, das Lustschloß, -ßes, -ßer

airy fabric, the, das Luftgebäude,
-s, —

alarm, to, beunruhigen, sich beun-
ruhigen; erschrecken; don't be a-
larmed, seien Sie ohne Sorge,
beunruhigen Sie sich nicht

alas, leider, o weh, ach!

alderman, the, der Aldermann, -s,
-er

ale, the, das Bier, -s, -e

alert, munter

Alexandria, Alexandrien

alien, the, der Ausländer, -s, —

alienate, to, entfremden

alike, ohne Unterschied

all, all

all the time, unaufhörlich

allege, to, behaupten

allegiance, the, die Anhänglichkeit

alley, the, die Gasse, *pl.* -n

ally, the, der Verbündete, -n, -n

allow, to, lassen, *str. v. gestatten*

almanac, the, der Almanach, -s, -e

almost, beinahe

alms, das Almosen, -s, —

alone, allein

along, entlang

already, schon

Alsace, der or das Elsaß, -ßes

alter, to, ändern, sich ändern, verän-
dern

alteration, the, die Veränderung,
pl. -en

alternative, the, die Wahl, *pl.* -en

amaze, to, in Erstaunen setzen

ambassador, the, der Gesandte, -n,
-n

ambition, the, der Ehrgeiz, -es

ambitious, ehrgeizig

American, *subst.* der Amerikaner,
-s, —

American, *adj.* amerikanisch

amicable, liebenswürdig

amidst, inmitten, mitten, unter

among, unter

amount, to, sich belaufen (auf), *str.*
v. insep.

amuse, to, unterhalten, *str. v. insep.*

analogy, the, die Ähnlichkeit, *pl.* -en

ancestor, the, der Vorfahr, -s, -en

and, und

and so on, u.s.w. (und so weiter)

anger, the, der Zorn, -s

Anglo-Saxon, the, der Angelsächse,
-n, -n,

animate, to, begeistern

animating, belebend, belebt

annihilate, to, vernichten

announce, to, annehmen

- annual, jährlich
annul, to, vernichten, aufheben, *str.*
 v. sep.
answer, to, antworten, to — the
 same purpose, denselben Zweck
 dienen
antechamber, the, das Vorzimmer,
 -s, —
antiquity, the, das Altertum, -s,
 "-er
anxiety, the, die Besorgnis, *pl.* -se
anxious, besorgt, bang; to be —
 for, etwas dringend wünschen
any, irgend eine, irgend welche
anybody, irgend jemand
anything, irgend etwas
anyway, in, in keinerlei Weise
apart from, ohne Rücksicht auf
apartment, das Zimmer, -s, —
apologue, the, die Fabel, *pl.* -n
apostle, the, der Apostel, -s, —
apostolic, apostolisch
apothecary, the, der Apotheker,
 -s, —
apparent, augenscheinlich, klar, sicht-
 bar; scheinbar
apparition, the, die Erscheinung, *pl.*
 -en
appear, to, scheinen, *str. v. er-*
 scheinen
appearance, the, die Erscheinung,
 pl. -en
applause, the, der Beifall, *pl.* -s
application, the, die Anwendung,
 pl. -en
apply, to, verwenden, anwenden;
 — to some one, sich an jemanden
 wenden
appoint, to, ernennen, *str. v. insep.*
apprehend, to, besorgen, befürchten
apprentice, to be bred, für ein Fach
 erzogen werden, in die Lehre gehen
apprentice, to, in die Lehre gehen,
 kommen, geben, *str. verbs*
approach, to, sich nähern
appropriate, passend, schicklich
approve, to, billigen
approved, bewährt
arch, archly, schalkhaft
archduke, the, der Erzherzog, -s,
 "-e
argument, to make an, eine Sache
 (Frage) erörtern; think out a
 whole —, einen Fall bis zum Ende
 ausdenken
arise, to, entstehen, *str. v. insep.*,
 sich erheben, *str. v. insep.*, statt
 finden, *str. v.*
aristocracy, the, die Aristokratie
arm, the, der Arm, -s, -e; (weapon)
 die Waffe, *pl.* -n
arm, to, bewaffnen, rüsten
arm-chair, the, der Sesselstuhl, -s,
 "-e
army, the, das Heer, -es, -e; die
 Armee, *pl.* -n
aroma, the, das Aroma, -s; der Duft,
 -es, "-e
arrange, to, abmachen, ordnen, ein-
 richten, *sep.*
arrangement, the, die Anstalt, *pl.*
 -en; die Anordnung, *pl.* -en
arrival, the, die Ankunft
arrive, to, ankommen, *str. v. sep.*
art, the, die Kunst, *pl.* "-e
articulation, the, die Aussprache
artist, the, der Künstler, -s, —
as, als wie; as — as, ebenso wie;
 as far as, bis an, bis zu; as well
 — as, sowohl — als auch; as to,
 mit Rücksicht auf, mit Bezug auf
ascend, to, aufsteigen, *str. v. sep.*
ascertain, to, ermitteln, heraus-
 finden, *str. v.*

ashamed, to be, sich schämen
 ashes, the, die Asche (*sing.*)
 aside, beiseite
 ask for, to, bitten um, *str. v. sep.*
 aspect, the, das Aussehen
 ass, the, der Esel, -s, —
 assail, to, angreifen, *str. v. sep.*
 assailant, the, der Angreifer, -s, —
 assemble, to, sich versammeln
 assign, to, zuweisen, *str. v. sep.*
 assimilate, to, ähnlich machen
 assist, to, beistehen, *str. v. sep.*,
 helfen, *str. v.*
 association, the, die Verbindung,
pl. -en
 assume, to, annehmen, *str. v. sep.*
 assure, to, versichern
 astonishment, the, die Verwun-
 derung
 at, an, bei; — least, wenigstens, —
 length, endlich, — once, sogleich
 Athens, Athen
 atmosphere, the, die Atmosphäre,
 die umgebende Luft
 attach, to, verbinden (to — mit),
str. v. insep.
 attached to, to be, zugethan sein
 attachment, the, die Anhänglichkeit
 attack, to, angreifen, *str. v. sep.*
 attain, to, erlangen
 attempt, the, der Versuch, -s, -e
 attempt, to, versuchen
 attention, the, die Aufmerksamkeit
 attentively, aufmerksam
 attic, the, die Dachstube, *pl. -n*;
 das Dachstübchen, -s, —
 attire, the, die Kleidung, *pl. -en*
 attire, to, kleiden, sich kleiden, an-
 ziehen, *str. v. sep.*
 attraction, the, die Merkwürdigkeit,
pl. -en
 audacious, kühn,

audacity, the, die Kühnheit, -en
 audience, the, das Publikum, -s;
 eine Anzahl von Zuhörern
 auditor, the, der Zuhörer, -s, —
 aught, for — I know, so viel ich
 weiß
 August (the month), der August
 aunt, the, die Tante, *pl. -n*
 auspices, the, der Schutz, -es
 author, the, der Schriftsteller, -s,
 —; (of a particular book) der
 Verfasser, -s, —
 authority, the, die Autorität, *pl. -en*
 Austria, Österreich, -s
 Austrian, österreichisch
 autumn, der Herbst; — evening,
 der Herbstabend
 average, the, der Durchschnitt, -s;
 on an —, durchschnittlich
 aversion, the, der Widerwille, -ns
 avoid, to, vermeiden, *str. v. insep.*
 aware, to be, bemerken, ahnen,
 wissen, sich bewußt sein; to become
 —, gewahr werden
 away, weg
 awkward, unbeholffen, seltsam
 axe, the, die Art, *pl. -e*; das Beil,
 -s, -e.

B

back, the, der Rücken, -s, —
 back, *adv.*, zurück
 bad, schlecht
 bag, the, der Beutel, -s, —; der
 Sack, -es, -e
 baggage, the, das Gepäck, -s
 balance, the, das Gleichgewicht, -es
 ball, the, der Ball, -s, -e; masked
 —, Maskenball
 banish, to, verbannen
 bank, the (shore), das Ufer, -s, —

bank, the, die Sandbank, <i>pl.</i> -e; die Untiefe, <i>pl.</i> -n	become, to, werden
bank, the (commercial), die Bank, <i>pl.</i> -en	bedfellow, the, der Schlafkamerad, -en, -en
bank-credit, the, der Bank-Kredit, -s	bedroom, the, das Schlafzimmer, -s, —
bankrupt, bankrott	bedstead, the, die Bettstelle, <i>pl.</i> -n
bankruptcy, the, der Bankrott, -s, -e	beer, the, das Bier -s, -e; small —, das Dünnbier
banner, the, das Banner, -s, —; die Fahne, <i>pl.</i> -n	before, vor, ehe; — day, vor Tagesanbruch; to be —, voraus seit
barbarian, the, der Barbar, -en, -en	beforehand, vorher, schon
barbarous, barbarisch	beg, to, bitten, <i>str. v.</i> , betteln, flehen (um etwas)
bare, bloß	beggar, the, der Bettler, -s, —
bark, to, beßen, <i>w. v.</i>	beginning, the, der Anfang, -s, -e
base, to, gründen, beruhen (auf)	behave, to, sich benehmen <i>str. v.</i> <i>insep.</i>
basket, the, der Korb -s, -e	behind, hinter
bathe, baden, sich baden	being, the, das Geschöpf, -es, -e
battalion, the, das Bataillon, -s, -e	belief, the, der Glaube, -ens, no <i>pl.</i>
battle, the, die Schlacht, <i>pl.</i> -en	bell, the, die Glocke, <i>pl.</i> -n; die Schelle, <i>pl.</i> -n; das Glöckchen
Bavaria, Bayern	belong to, to, gehören
Bavarian, bairisch	below, unten
bawl, to, schreien; to — out to, ansprechen, <i>str. v. insep.</i> ; freisprechen, <i>str. or w.</i>	bench, the, die Bank, <i>pl.</i> -e
bay, the, die Bucht, <i>pl.</i> -en; die Bai, <i>pl.</i> -en	beneath, unter
be, to, sein, sich befinden, machen; to be about, wollen, im Begriff sein; that is, das heißt	beneficence, the, die Milbthätigkeit
beach, the, der Strand, -es	benefit, the, die Wohlthat, <i>pl.</i> -en
beam, the, der Balken, -s, —	benevolence, the, die Wohlthätigkeit
bear, to, tragen, <i>str. v.</i> , ertragen, <i>str. v. insep.</i> ; — company, Gesellschaft leisten	bequeath, to, vermachen, vererben.
beard, the, der Bart, -es, -e	best, am besten, am meisten
hearing, the, das Benehmen, -s	bestow, to, geben, <i>str. v.</i> , spenden, erteilen
beast, the, das Tier, -s, -e	bet, the, die Wette, <i>pl.</i> -n
beauty, die Schönheit, <i>pl.</i> -en	better, besser, lieber
beaver-bonnet, the, der Filzhut, -s, -e	between, zwischen, unter
because, weil	beyond, jenseit, hinter, dahinter- liegend
	bid, to, heißen, <i>str. v.</i> , — some one bear in mind, jemanden an etwas erinnern

big, groß
 bilious, leberkrank
 bind, to, binden, *str. v.*
 biography, the, die Biographie, -n
 bird, the, der Vogel, -s, —
 birth, the, die Geburt, *pl. -en*; to
 give —, erzeugen
 bishop, the, der Bischof, -s, —e
 bishopric, the, das Bistum, -s, —er
 bit, the, das Bißchen, -s, —; a —
 of string, ein Ende Bindfaden,
 ein wenig
 bite, to, beißen, *str. v.*
 blackmail, to levy, Räuberloß
 (Schutzgeld) erpressen
 blame, to, tadeln
 blaze, the, der Feuerstein, -s, -e
 blessing, the, der Segen, -s, *pl. die*
 Segnungen
 bliss, the, die Seligkeit, die Glück-
 seligkeit
 blood, the, das Blut, -s
 bloom, the, der Glaum, -s, no *pl.*
 bloom, to, blühen
 blow, to, wehen, blasen, *str. v.*
 blue, blau
 blunder, the, der Fehler, -s, —
 blunderbuss, the, die Muskete, *pl.*
 -n
 bluntness, the, die Dürbheit
 blush, to, erröten
 board, on, an Bord
 boarding-school, the, das Pensionat,
 -s, -e
 boast, the, die Prahlerei, *pl. -en*
 boast, to, sich rühmen
 boat, the, das Boot, -s, -e, or —e
 body of people, a, eine Versammlung
 von Leuten
 Boeotia, Böötien
 boisterous, lärmend
 bold, kühn

bone, the, der Knochen, -s, —
 book, the, das Buch, -s, —er
 book-shelf, the, das Bücherbrett, -s,
 -er
 booty, the, die Beute
 both, beide, sowohl — als auch
 bother, to, plagen, quälen; don't —,
 laß mich ungeschoren
 bottle, the, die Flasche, *pl. -n*
 bottom, the, der Boden, -s, —
 bounce, to, zappeln, springen, *str. v.*
 bounty, the, das Handgeld, -s, -er
 bow, the, die Verbeugung, *pl. -en*;
 a low —, eine tiefe Verbeugung
 bow, to, sich verneigen, sich verbeugen;
 — low, tief
 box, the, die Schachtel, *pl. -n*; der
 Kasten, -s, —; das Kästchen, -s, —;
 der Koffer, -s, —
 boy, the, der Knabe, -n, -n; der
 Junge, -n, -n; das Schulkind, -es,
 -er
 boyhood, the, das Knabenalter, -s;
 die Knabenzeit
 brag, to, prahlen
 brain, the, das Hirn, -s; young
 brains, junge Köpfe
 branch, the, der Zweig, -s, -e
 Brasil, Brasilien
 Brazilian, brasilisch
 brass-plate, the, die Messingplatte,
 pl. -n
 brave, brav, tapfer, kühn; — weather,
 herrliches Wetter
 breach, the, der Bruch, -s, —e; — of
 honour, Ehrenverletzung
 break, to (of the day), anbrechen,
 str. v. sep.
 break up, to (start), aufbrechen, *str.*
 v. sep.; — a party, auflösen
 breakfast, the, das Frühstück, -s, -e
 breakfast, to, frühstücken

breathe, to (draw breath), atmen;
 (breathe on) hauchen
 breeches, the, die Hosen, *pl.*
 breeze, the, die Brise, *pl. -n*; der
 Luftzug, -s, -e
 briefly, kurz
 bright, hell, heiter
 brilliant, glänzend, herrlich, brillant
 bring, to, bringen, *str. v.*, erwerben,
str. v. insep.; tragen, *str. v.*; —
 to a close, zu Ende bringen
 brisk trade, gute Geschäfte (*pl.*)
 British, britisch
 brothers, Gebrüder
 browbeat, to, anschauzen, *w. v. sep.*
 brown, braun
 Brussels, Brüssel
 buckle, the, die Schnalle, *pl. -n*
 builder, the, der Baunternehmer,
 -s, —
 building, the, das Gebäude, -s, —
 bulk, the, die Masse, *pl. -n*; der
 Umfang, -s
 bullock, the, der Ochse, der Ochse, -n,
 -n
 bumper, the, das volle Glas, -es,
 -er
 bunch of grapes, the, die Trauben
 (*pl.*)
 bundle, the, das Bündel, -s, —;
 das Pack, -s, (*no pl.*)
 burn, to, brennen, *irreg. v.*
 burst out, to, ausbrechen, *str. v. sep.*
 bury, to, begraben, *str. v. insep.*
 bush, the, der Busch, -es, -e;
 bushes, das Gebüsch
 bushy, buschig
 business, the, das Geschäft, -es, —;
 man of —, Geschäftsmann
 busy, geschäftig

but, aber, außer; but for, ohne,
 wäre nicht
 butler, the, der Kellermeister, -s, —
 button, the, der Knopf, -es, -e;
 twisted buttons, gezwirnte, ge-
 spinnene Knöpfe
 buoyant, flott, stark, hehend
 buy, to, kaufen
 by, von, durch; by (the side of),
 neben; by-and-by, mit der Zeit,
 nachgerade; by yourself, allein
 Byzantine, byzantinisch, von Byzanz.

C

cabin, the, die Kajüte, *pl. -n*
 cage, the, der Käfig, -s, -e; der or
 das Vogelbauer, -s, —
 call, to, rufen, *str. v.*; (to name),
 nennen, *str. v.*
 can, können, *irreg. v.*
 can, I, ich kann
 candle, the, das Licht, -es, -e
 candle-light, the, das Kerzenlicht,
 das Licht, -es, -er
 cane, the, der Spazierstock, -s, -e
 capacity, the, die Befähigung, *pl. -en*
 capital, the, (of a country), die
 Hauptstadt, *pl. -e*
 capital, herrlich
 captain, the, (at sea), der Kapitän,
 -s, -e; (on land), der Hauptmann,
 -s, -leute; (commander), great
 soldier), Befehlshaber, General
 Capuchin friar, a, ein Kapuziner
 car, the, der Wagen, -s, —; die
 Droschke, *pl. -n*
 cardinal, the, der Kardinal, -s, -e
 care, the, die Sorge, *pl. -n*; die
 Sorgfalt; with —, sorgfältig; to
 take —, in acht nehmen, *str. v.*,
 beschützen

care, to, sich kümmern
 career, the, die Laufbahn, *pl.* -en
 careful, sorgfältig
 carefully, behutsam, sorgfältig
 carpenter, the, der Zimmermann, -s, -er
 carriage, the, der Wagen, -s, —
 carry, to, tragen, *str. v.*; (a law) durchbringen, *str. v. sep.*; — on, führen; — away, entführen
 cart, the, der Karren, -s, —; die Karre; — horse, das Karrenpferd, -s, -e
 carte-blanche, unumschränkte Vollmacht
 cast down, to, nieder schlagen, *str. v. sep.*, betrüben
 Castile, Kastilien
 Castilian, der Kastilianer, -s, —
 castle, the, das Schloß, -fess, -fess; — in the air, das Lustschloß
 cat, the, die Katze, *pl.* -n
 catalogue, the, der Katalog, -s, -e; die Liste, *pl.* -n
 cathedral, the, der Dom, -s, -e; die Kathedrale
 cause, the, die Sache
 cause, to, verursachen
 caution, the, die Vorsicht; with —, vorsichtig
 cautious, vorsichtig
 cave, the, die Höhle
 cease, to, aufhören
 coiling, the, die Decke, *pl.* -n
 celebrated, berühmt
 celestial, himmlisch
 cellar, the, der Keller, -s, —
 central, zentral, central
 century, the, das Jahrhundert, -s, -e
 certain, gewiß
 certainly, gewiß

chair, the, der Stuhl, -s, -e
 chalk out, to, vorzeichnen, *w. v. sep.*
 chance, the, der Zufall, -s, -e; die Gelegenheit; by —, aus Zufall, zufällig
 change, the, der Wechsel, -s, —; die Veränderung, *pl.* -en; der Umschwung, -s
 change, to, ändern, sich ändern, anders werden, wechseln
 chapter, the, das Kapitel, -s, —
 character, the, der Charakter, -s, -e; die Eigenschaft, *pl.* -en
 characteristic, the, das Kennzeichen, -s, —
 charge, the, die Aufbewahrung, die Aufsicht
 Charles, Karl, -s
 charm, the, der Zauber, -s, —
 charming, reizend; most — of all, allerreizendst
 chat, to, plaudern
 chat, to have a, plaudern
 check, the, die Kontrolle
 check, to, kontrollieren
 cheek, the, die Wange, *pl.* -n; die Backe, *pl.* -n
 chest, the, die Kiste, *pl.* -n; sea —, Seekiste, *pl.* -n; der Kasten, -s, —
 chief, the, der Häuptling -s, -e
 chiefly, hauptsächlich, größtenteils, besonders
 child, the, das Kind, -s, -er
 childhood, the, die Kindheit
 chill, to, abkühlen
 chilly, kalt, unfreundlich
 Chinese, chinesisch
 chivalry, the, das Rittertum, -s
 choice, the, die Wahl, *pl.* -en
 Christendom, die Christenheit
 Christian, the, der Christ, -en, -en

Christian, christlich	coach, the, der Wagen, -s, —; der Postwagen, die Diligence
Christianity, das Christentum, -s	coal-merchant, the, der Kohlenhändler, -s, —
Christmas-box, the, das Weihnachts-geschenk, -s, -e	coat, the, der Rock, -s, -e
church, the, die Kirche, <i>pl.</i> -n	coax, to, schmeicheln
circle, the, der Kreis, -es, -e	cobbler, the, der Schuster, -s, —; der Schuhflicker, -s, —
circumstance, der Umstand, -es, -e	code, the, der Stodex
citizen, the, der Bürger, -s, —	coffee-house, the, das Kaffeehaus, -es, -er
city, the, die Stadt, <i>pl.</i> -e; — of London, die City	coin, the, die Münze, <i>pl.</i> -n
civil, höflich, bürgerlich; — war, der Bürgerkrieg, -s, -e	cold, kalt
civility, the, die Höflichkeit	collect, to, zusammenbringen, <i>str.</i> <i>v. sep.</i> ; sammeln, versammeln
civilisation, the, die Civilisation, die Gesittung	collection, the, die Sammlung, <i>pl.</i> -en
civilised, civilisiert, gesittet	colonise, to, kolonisieren
claim, the, der Anspruch, -s, -e	colony, the, die Kolonie, -en
claim, to, beanspruchen	colt, the, das Fohlen, -s, —; das Füllen, -s, —
class, the, die Klasse, <i>pl.</i> -n	colour, the, die Farbe, <i>pl.</i> -n; die Färbung
clause, the, der Satz, -es, -e	coloured, gefärbt
clear, klar	combination, the, die Kombination, <i>pl.</i> -en; die Verbindung, <i>pl.</i> -en; der Zusammenhang, -s
clever, geschickt, geschäft	come, kommen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i>
climate, the, das Klima, -s	come down to us, auf uns kommen
climb, to, steigen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i> ; klettern, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i> , klettern	come to, to, dazu kommen, dahin kommen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i> , gelingen, <i>str.</i> <i>v. imp.</i>
cling, to, sich festklammern, <i>w. v. sep.</i> ; anhängen, <i>w. v. sep.</i>	come upon, to, treffen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i> ; auf etwas kommen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i>
cloak, the, der Mantel, -s, -e	comfort, the, die Bequemlichkeit
clock, die Uhr, <i>pl.</i> -en	comfortable, bequem, heimisch
close, bring to a, zu Ende bringen	comfortably, gemächlich
close, to, schließen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i> , ver-schließen, <i>str.</i> <i>v. insep.</i>	command, to, befehlen, <i>str.</i> <i>v.</i>
close by, nahe bei, dicht dabei	command, to give the word of, kommandieren
closely, ungetrennlich	commence, to, anfangen, <i>str.</i> <i>v. sep.</i>
cloth, the, das Tuch, -s, -er, and (kinds of cloth), -e	
clothes, the, die Kleidung, -en; die Kleider (<i>pl.</i>)	
cloud, the, die Wolke, <i>pl.</i> -n	
club, the, der Klub, -s, -s; die Gesellschaft	

commentary, the, die Anmerkung, *pl.* -en
 commerce, the, der Handel, -s
 commission lottery agent, a, ein Lotterie-Kollektor
 common, gewöhnlich, gemein; to grow more —, sich verbreiten; in — with, in Gemeinschaft mit
 common sense, der gesunde Menschenverstand, -es
 Commons, the, die Gemeinen, das Unterhaus
 communication, the, die Mitteilung, *pl.* -en; der Verkehr, -s
 communicative, mittheilend, gesprächig
 community, the, die Gemeinde, *pl.* -n; die bürgerliche Gemeinde
 compact, abgerundet, in sich geschlossen
 companion, the, der Gefährte, -n, -n
 company, the, die Gesellschaft, *pl.* -en; to bear —, Gesellschaft leisten
 compare, to, vergleichen, *str.* v. *insep.*; compare with, im Vergleich mit
 compel, to, zwingen, *str.* v.; nötigen
 complain, to, klagen, sich beklagen, sich beschweren
 complete, vollständig
 complete, to, vollenden, vervollständigen
 completely, gänzlich
 completeness, the, die Vervollständigung
 compliment, the, das Kompliment; -s, -e; der Lobspruch, -s, —e; to present compliments, sich empfehlen, *str.* v. *insep.*
 compose, to, zusammensetzen, erfinden, *str.* v.; to be composed of, bestehen aus; composed of, aus

composition, the, die Arbeit, -en
 conceal, to, verbergen, *str.* v. *insep.*
 conceive, to (an aversion), (einen Widerwillen) fassen
 concern, the, die Theilnahme; der Gram, -s
 concern, to, angehen, *str.* v. *sep.*; betreffen, *str.* v. *insep.*
 concert, the, das Konzert, -s, -e
 concession, the, das Geständnis, -fßes, -fße
 conclude, to, schließen, *str.* v.
 conclusion, the, der Schluß, -fßes, —fße; das Schlußwort, -es, -e
 concur, to, übereinstimmen
 condemn, to, beurtheilen, verdammen
 condense, to, verdichten, zusammen drängen
 condensed, gedrängt
 condescend, to, sich herablassen, *str.* v. *sep.*
 condition, the, der Zustand, -es, —e
 conduct, the, das Betragen, -s
 confidence, the, das Vertrauen, -s; das Zutrauen, -s
 confine, to, beschränken, einsperren, in Haft halten, *str.* v.
 confusion, the, die Verwirrung, Verlegenheit
 conjunction, the, das Bindewort, -es, —er; die Konjunktion, *pl.* -en
 connoisseur, the, der Kenner, -s, —
 conquer, to, siegen
 conqueror, the, der Eroberer, -s, —
 conquest, the, die Eroberung, *pl.* -en; der Sieg, -s, -e
 conscious, bewußt; to be — of, sich einer Sache bewußt sein
 consciousness, the, das Bewußtsein, -s

consecrate, to, weihen, heiligen
 consent, to, zusagen, *sep.*
 consequence, the, die Folge, *pl. -n*;
 of no —, ohne Bedeutung, unbe-
 deutend
 consequently, folglich, in Folge
 conservatory, the, das Gewächshaus, -*seß, -fer*
 consider, to, überlegen, bedenken,
str. v. insep.; für etwas halten,
str. v.
 considerable, bedeutend
 consideration, the, die Überlegung,
 die Aufmerksamkeit
 considering, in Rücksicht auf
 consist of, to, bestehen aus, *str. v. insep.*
 consolation, the, der Trost -*es*
 constant, fortwährend, unaufhörlich,
 beständig
 Constantine, Konstantin
 Constantinople, Konstantinopel
 constantly, immer, fortwährend
 constitute, to, ausmachen, bilden
 constitution, the, die Verfassung,
pl. -en; die Konstitution, *pl. -en*,
 die Gesundheit
 constitutional (walk), a, ein Ge-
 sundheitsspaziergang, -*s, -e*
 conspicuous, auffallend, augenschein-
 lich
 consummate, to, vollenden, *insep.*;
 vollbringen, *str. v. insep.*
 contain, to, enthalten, *str. v. insep.*
 contemporary, the, der Zeitgenosse,
pl. -n
 contemporary, gleichzeitig
 contemptible, verächtlich, zu ver-
 achten
 contemptuously, verächtlich, mit
 Verachtung
 content oneself, to, sich begnügen

context, the, der Zusammenhang, -*s*;
 die zusammenhängende Stelle
 continent, the, das Festland, -*s*
 continental, continental, des Fest-
 landes
 continue, to, fortfahren, *str. v. sep.*
 continuity, the, der Zusammenhang
 continuous, zusammenhängend
 contrary (of wind), widrig, ungünstig
 contrary, on the, im Gegenteil
 contrast, the, der Kontrast, -*es, -e*
 contrivance, the, die Vorrichtung,
pl. -en
 controversy, the, der Streit, -*s, -e*
 convenience, the, die Bequemlichkeit,
pl. -e
 conversation, the, die Konversation,
pl. -en; das Gespräch, -*s, -e*; die
 Unterhaltung, *pl. -en*
 convey, to, anbringen, *str. v. sep.*;
 mitteilen, *w. v. sep.*
 conveyance, the, das Fuhrwerk, -*s, -e*
 conviction, the, die Überzeugung
 convince, to, überreden, überzeugen
 convulsive, krampfhaft
 cookery-book, the, das Kochbuch,
 -*s, -er*
 cook, the, *m.*, der Koch, -*s, -e*; *f.*
 die Köchin, *pl. -nen*
 cool, kühl
 cool, to, abkühlen, kühl machen, sich
 abkühlen
 cooling, the, die Abkühlung, das
 Abkühlen
 coolness, the, die Kühle
 copy, the, das Exemplar, -*s, -e*; die
 -Abschrift, *pl. -en*
 copy, to, abschreiben, *str. v. sep.*
 coral, the, die Koralle, *pl. -n*
 cord, the, der Strick, -*s, -e*
 cordially, herzlich

cork, the, der Kork, -s, -e
 cornfield, the, das Kornfeld, -es, -er
 corn laws, the, die Korngesetze
 correct, richtig, fehlerfrei
 correct, to; verbessern
 corporation, the, die Körperschaft,
pl. -en
 corrupt, to, verderben, *insep. str.*
 or *v.*
 costly, kostbar
 costume, the, die Tracht, *pl. -en*;
 das Kostüm, -s, -e
 cottage, the, die Hütte, *pl. -en*; das
 Häuschen, -s, —
 council, the, der Rat, der Staatsrat,
 -s, ["]e
 count, to, zählen
 country, the, das Land, -es, ["]e
 countryman, the, der Landsmann,
 -s, -leute
 county, the, die Grafschaft, *pl. -en*;
 der Kreis, -fes, -fe; — business,
 Kreisgeschäfte
 courage, the, der Mut, -s
 course, the, der Lauf, der Verlauf,
 -s
 course, of, natürlich, natürlicherweise
 court, the, der Hof, -es, ["]e
 court-dress, the, die Hofkleidung
 courtesy, the, die Höflichkeit, *pl. -en*
 cousin, the, der Cousin, -s, -s, der
 Vetter, -s, -n; die Cousine, *pl. -n*;
 die Base, *pl. -n*
 cover, to, bedecken
 covering, the, die Decke; under the
 —, im Gemande
 coz, Cousin, Cousine
 cradle, the, die Wiege, *pl. -n*
 cramp, to, einschränken
 crave for, to, einen großen Appetit
 auf etwas haben
 crawl, to, kriechen, *str. v.*, sich schleppen

creation, the, die Schöpfung, die
 Erschaffung
 credit, the, der Kredit, die Ehre
 credulity, the, die Leichtgläubig-
 keit
 crevice, the, die Ritze, *pl. -n*
 crew, the, die Mannschaft, *pl. -en*
 cricket-field, the, der Spielplatz
 critic, the, der Kritiker, -s, —
 crop, the, die Ernte
 cross, the, das Kreuz, -es, -e
 cross, to (a river), überschreiten, *str.*
v. insep.
 cross, *adj.*, vertrießlich
 crowded, gedrängt, erfüllt, vom Volke
 gedrängt
 cruel, grausam
 cruelty, the, die Grausamkeit, -en
 crust, the, die Kruste, *pl. -n*
 crush, to, zermalmen, zertreten, *str.*
v. insep.
 cry, to, schreien, *str. v.*; weinen;
 Thränen vergießen, *str. v. insep.*
 crystal, *adj.* kristallin
 cubical, kubisch
 cultivate, to, kultivieren, ziehen,
str. v.
 cultivated, gebildet
 cultivation (of the soil), the, der
 Ackerbau, -s; die Bodenkultur; (of
 the mind), die Bildung
 cup, the, der Becher, -s, —
 curate, the, der Hilfsgeistliche, -n, -n
 cure, the, die Genesung, Heilung
 curiosity, the, die Neugierde
 curious, neugierig, merkwürdig
 curtain, the, der Vorhang, -s, ["]e
 curved, gebogen
 cut a person, to, jemandem aus dem
 Wege gehen, *str. v.*
 cutlass, the, der Degen, -s, —; der
 Hirschfänger, -s, —

cutler, the, der Messerschmied, -s, -e.

D

daily, täglich, alle Tage

dainty, the, die Delikatesse, *pl. -n*

damsel, the, das Fräulein, -s, —

damp, *adj.* feucht; *subst.*, die, Feuchtigkeits

danger, the, die Gefahr, *pl. -en*

dangerous, gefährlich

dare, to, wagen, *w. v.*, dürfen, *irreg. v.*

daring, kühn, maghäftig

dark, dunkel, finster

dark, after, nach Sonnenuntergang, nachdem es finster geworden ist (war)

dart, the, der Pfeil, -s, -e

day, the, der Tag, -s, -e; before — vor Tagesanbruch

days, in these, heutzutage

day's work, das Tagewerk, -s, -e

dazzling, grell

dead, tot

Dead Sea, the, das tote Meer, -s

deal more, a great, viel mehr

deal with, to, behandeln

death, der Tod, -s, -e

deaths, Todesfälle

debate, the, die Debatte, *pl. -n*

debate, to, debattieren

debt, the, die Schuld, *pl. -en*; a bad —, eine schlechte, zweifelhafte Schuld

decay, the, der Verfall, -s

decease, the, der Tod, -es

deceit, the, der Betrug, -s; die Heuchelei

deceive, to, täuschen

deceptive, trügerisch

decide, to, entscheiden, *str. v. insep.*

deck, the, das Verdeck, -s, -e; das Deck

declamation, the, der rednerische Eifer, die eifernde Rede

declaration, the, die Erklärung, *pl. -en*

declare, to, erklären

decline, to, ablehnen, *w. v. sep.*; ausschlagen, *str. v. sep.*

decrepitude, the, die Gebrechlichkeit

dedication, the, die Widmung, -en

deep, tief

deeply, tief

defeat, the, die Niederlage, *pl. -n*

defect, the, der Fehler, der Mangel, -s, —

defective, mangelhaft

defenceless, mehrlos

defend, to, verteidigen

defender, the, der Verteidiger, -s, —

deficient, to be, gebrechen (an), *str. v. insep. impers.*; mangeln (an), *impers.*

degenerate, entartet

degrade, to, erniedrigen

degree, the, der Grad, -es, -e; by degrees, allmählich

delay, to, aufschieben, *str. v. sep.*

delicate, zart

delicious, höchst angenehm, erfrischend

delightful, bezaubernd, prächtig

deliver, to (a letter), abgeben, *str. v. sep.*; (set free) befreien, erlösen

deliverance, the, die Befreiung

delude, to, täuschen, anführen, verleiten

demand, the, die Bitte, *pl. -n*

democratic, demokratisch

demonstration, the, der Beweis, -es, -fe

denominate, to, nennen, *str. v.*; heißen, *str. v.*

dense, dicht
 deny, to, versagen, vorenthalten,
str. v. sep.
 depart, to, abreisen, *sep.*
 department of knowledge, der
 Wissenszweig, -s, -e
 departure, the, die Abfahrt, *pl. -en*
 depend, to, abhängen, abhängig sein;
 — on, sich auf jemanden verlassen,
str. v. insep.
 dependence, the, die Abhängigkeit;
 in —, abhängig
 depict, to, darstellen
 deposit, to, niederlegen
 deprive, to, berauben
 derive, to, entnehmen, *str. v. insep.*;
 (a word) ableiten, *w. v. sep.*
 derogatory, geringschätzig; to be —
 to, geringschätzig behandeln
 descant, to, sich (über eine Sache)
 verbreiten
 descend, to, heruntergehen, *str. v.*
sep.; übergehen, *str. v. insep.*
 descendant, the, der Nachkomme,
 -n, -n
 describe, to, beschreiben, *str. v.*
insep.
 description, the, die Beschreibung,
 -en
 design, to, bestimmen
 desire, to, wünschen; (a person),
 ersuchen
 desperate, verzweifelt, verzweigen
 despise, to, verachten
 destitute, to be, ermangeln; es
 mangelt an, es fehlt an
 destroy, to, zerstören
 detailed, genau, eingehend
 determine, beschließen, *str. v. insep.*;
 sich entschließen
 detestable, abschœulich
 developed, ausgewachsen

development, the, die Entwicklung,
pl. -en
 devise, to, erfinden, *str. v. insep.*
 devotion, the, die Frömmigkeit
 devour, to, verschlingen, *str. v. in-*
sep.
 dew, the, der Thau, -es
 dexterity, the, die Geschicklichkeit, *pl.*
-en
 dialect, the, die Mundart, *pl. -en*
 differ, to, sich unterscheiden, *str. v.*
insep.
 difference, the, die Verschiedenheit,
pl. -en; der Unterschied, -s, -e
 different, verschieden
 difficulty, the, die Schwierigkeit, *pl.*
-en
 diffusion, the, die Verbreitung
 digest, to, verdauen
 dignity, the, *pl.* die Würde, -n
 diminish, to, vermindern, sich ver-
 mindern
 diminution, the, die Verminderung
 dine out, to, außer dem Hause
 speisen, Einladungen zu Diners
 annehmen
 dining-room, the, der Speisesaal, -s,
 -säle
 dinner, the, das Mittagessen, -s;
 das Essen, -s, —
 dinner-company, to keep, Diners
 geben, *str. v.*
 dinner-party, the, die Tischgesell-
 schaft, *pl. -en*
 dinner-table, the, der Mittagstisch,
 -s, -e
 diplomatic, diplomatisch
 diplomatist, the, der Diplomat, -en
 -en
 direct, to, lenken,
 direct, direct; (of descent in grader
 Linie

directly, unmittelbar
 disappointment, the, die getäuschte Erwartung, *pl.* -en
 discerning, *adj.*, einsichtsvoll
 discipline, the, die Zucht, die Kriegszucht, die Erziehung, die Ordnung
 discipline, to, unterrichten, ordnen, disciplinieren; well disciplined, in guter Zucht
 discount, the, das Diskonto
 discouraging, entmutigend
 discourse, the, die Rede, *pl.* -n
 discover, to, entdecken
 discovery, the, die Entdeckung, *pl.* -en
 disguise, the, die Verwandlung, *pl.* -en; die Verkleidung
 disguise, to, verhüllen, verdecken
 disgust, the, der Abscheu; from —, aus Abscheu
 dish, die Schüssel, *pl.* -n
 dismiss, to, entlassen, *str. v. insep.*; los werden, austreiben, *str. v. sep.*
 disorderly, unordentlich, nicht in Ordnung, ungehörig
 disparage, to, herabsetzen, *str. v. sep.*
 dispel, to, vertreiben, *str. v. insep.*
 display, to, entfalten
 disposal, to be at the, zu Gebote stehen, *str. v.*
 dispose, to, ordnen; — of, verfügen über
 disposed to, (inclined), geneigt
 disposition, the, die Neigung, *pl.* -en; to have a —, geneigt sein
 dispute, the, der Streit, -s, *pl.* die Streitigkeiten
 dispute, to, streiten, *str. v.*

dissolve, to, auflösen
 distance, the, die Entfernung, *pl.* -en; die Ferne, *pl.* -n
 distress, the, die Bebrängnis, *pl.* -sse
 distressed, unglücklich
 distribute, to, austheilen, verteilen, ausgeben, *str. v. sep.*
 district, the, die Gegend, *pl.* -en; der Bezirk, -s, -e
 dive, to, tauchen
 divert, to, belustigen
 diversion, the, die Abschweifung, *pl.* -en
 divine, göttlich
 do, to, thun, *str. v.*
 doctor, the, der Doktor, -s, -en; der Arzt, -es, -e
 dog, the, der Hund, -s, -e
 doll, the, die Puppe, *pl.* -n
 domain, the, die Besitzung, *pl.* -en; das Gebiet, -s, -e
 dome, the, der Dom, -s, -e
 domestic, häuslich
 dominion, the, die Herrschaft, *pl.* -en; das Gebiet, -s, -e
 done, beendigt
 door, the, die Thür, *pl.* -en; out of doors, draußen, außer dem Hause
 double, to, verdoppeln
 doubt, to; to have a —, to make a —, zweifeln
 down, hinunter
 downcast look, with, mit gesenktem Blick
 downstairs, unten
 drag, to, ziehen, *str. v.*
 drainage, the, die Drainierung, die Wasserableitung
 draught, the, der Zug, -s, -e; der Luftzug
 draw, to, ziehen, *str. v.*; — together,

zusammenziehen; — up troops,
 aufstellen; (design), zeichnen
 drawing-room, the, das Gesell-
 schaftszimmer, -s, —
 dread, the, die Beforgnis, *pl.* -isse;
 die Furcht, der Schrecken, -s
 dread, to, fürchten
 dream, the, der Traum, -s, "e
 dreamily, träumerisch
 dreary, traurig, langweilig
 dress, to, ankleiden, sich anziehen,
 sich ankleiden; — the hair, frisie-
 ren; — up, aufstutzen
 drill, to, drillen, üben
 drive, to, spazieren fahren, *str. v.* ;
 — up, vorfahren; (cast away),
 verschlagen
 drop, the, der Tropfen, -s, —
 drop, to, fallen lassen, *str. v.* ;
 — down, to, hinfallen, *str. v.*
sep. ; zusammenbrechen, *str. v.*
sep. ; — off, abfallen, *str. v.*
sep.
 drove, the, die Herde, *pl.* -n
 dry, trocken
 dry, to, trocknen
 drying-house, the, das Trocknhaus,
 -seß, "fer
 duck, the, die Ente, *pl.* -n, der
 Entenich, -s, -e; my —, mein
 Entchen, mein Liebchen
 due time, in, zu gehöriger Zeit
 duration, the, die Dauer
 during, während
 dull, dumm, langweilig,
 dully, dämlich, stumpfsinnig
 dusk, the, die Dämmerung, das
 Zwielicht
 duty, the, (to be performed), die
 Pflicht, *pl.* -en; (to be paid), die
 Steuer, die Abgabe, *pl.* -u; sense
 of —, das Pflichtgefühl

dwelling-house, the, das Wohnhaus,
 -seß, "fer.

E

each, jeder, -e, -es; — other,
 einander
 eager, ungestüm
 ear, the, das Ohr, -s, -en
 earl, the, der Graf, -en, -en
 early, früh, frühzeitig
 earnestness, the, der Ernst, -es; die
 Feierlichkeit
 ease, the, die Leichtigkeit
 east, the, der Ost, der Osten, -s
 Easterling, the, der Ostländer, -s, —
 eastern, östlich, morgenländisch, des
 Ostens, des Morgenlands
 easy, leicht
 eccentric, schwärmerisch
 eccentricity, the, die Excentricität,
pl. -en
 economic, ökonomisch
 economics, the, der Landbau, -s
 edge, the, (of a sword), die Schneide,
 (margin), der Rand, -es, "er
 edged, (of a dress), verbrämt
 edition, the, die Ausgabe, *pl.* -n
 editor, the, der Herausgeber, -s, —
 educated, gebildet
 education, the, die Erziehung, die
 Bildung
 effect, the, die Wirkung, *pl.* -en
 effectual, wirksam
 effort, the, der Entschluß, -seß, "e;
 die Entschlossenheit
 egg, the, das Ei, -s, -er
 eight, acht
 eighteen, achtzehn
 eighteenth, der achtzehnte
 ejaculation, the, der Ruf, -s, -e;
 der Ausruf
 ejaculate, to, ausrufen, *str. v. sep.*

elaborate, sorgfältig
 elated, stolz (auf), erfreut (über)
 election, the, die Wahl, *pl. -en*
 Elector, the, der Kurfürst, -en, -en
 elementary, elementar; — teach-
 ing, der Elementar-Unterricht
 elope from, to, entlaufen, *str. v.*
insep.; entweichen, *str. v. insep.*
 embark, to, sich einschiffen
 embarrass, to, bedrängen
 embarrassment, the, die Bedräng-
 niß, *pl. -sse*
 embody, to, verkörpern, sammeln
 eminently, ungemein
 emolument, the, der Vorteil, -s, -e;
 das Emolument, -s, -e
 emperor, the, der Kaiser, -s, —
 empire, the, das Reich, -s, -e
 employ, to, gebrauchen, beschäftigen
 empty, leer
 empty, to, leeren, ausleeren
 enable, to, in stand setzen, *str. v.*;
 möglich machen, erlauben
 enabled, to be, im stande sein
 enchantment, die Bezauberung, *pl.*
-en
 encircle, to, umgeben, *str. v. insep.*
 enclose, to, einschließen, *str. v.*
sep.
 encounter, to, treffen, *str. v.*, an-
 treffen, *str. v. sep.*
 encourage, to, ermutigen, viel
 versprechen, *str. v. insep.*
 endeavour, to, versuchen, sich
 bemühen
 endow, to, ausstatten, dotieren
 endure, to, dulden, erdulden
 enemy, the, der Feind, -es, -e
 enemies from within and without,
 innere und äußere Feinde
 enforce, to, erzwingen, *str. v. insep.*
 engage, to, beschäftigen; to be

engaged in, mit etwas beschäftigt
 sein
 engagement, the, die Verpflichtung,
pl. -en
 English, englisch
 Englishman, the, der Engländer,
 -s, —
 engrave, to, eingraben, *str. v.*
sep.
 engross, to, monopolisieren, für sich
 in Anspruch nehmen, *str. v.*
 enjoy, to, genießen, *str. v. insep.*,
 einen großen Genuß an etwas
 finden, sich an einer Sache ergötzen
 enjoyment, the, der Genuß, -fles
 —sse; die Belustigung, *pl. -en*
 enough, genug
 enrich, to, bereichern
 ensign, the, die Fahne, *pl. -n*
 ensue, to, folgen
 enter, to, (an office), antreten; (a
 room), eintreten, *str. v. sep.*; —
 upon, entgegen gehen, *str. v.*; —
 (a name), einschreiben, eintragen,
str. v. sep.
 entertain, to, unterhalten, *str. v.*
insep.; to be entertained by,
 unterhaltend finden
 entertaining, unterhaltend
 enthusiasm, the, der Enthusiasmus,
 der Mut, -s
 entitle to, to, berechtigen zu
 entreaty, the, die Bitte, *pl. -n*
 envoy, the, der Gesandte, -n, -n
 envy, to, beneiden
 epaulet, the, die Epaulette, *pl. -n*
 equal, unparteiisch, gleich, derselbe
 equally, gleich
 equivalent, der Ersatz, das Ersatz-
 mittel; *adj.* gleichwertig
 era, the, die Zeitrechnung
 erect, to, errichten

errand-boy, the, der Laufbursche, -n, -n
 erroneous, irrig
 error, the, der Irrtum, -s, -er; der Fehler, -s, —; der Mißgriff, -s, -e; to commit an —, einen Fehler, Mißgriff machen, begehen
 escape, to, entgehen, *str. v. insep.*
 essay, the, der Versuch, -s, -e; der Aufsatz, -es, -e
 establish, to, feststellen
 established, bestehend
 establishment, der Haushalt, die Haushaltung
 estate, (position), der Stand, -s, -e
 esteem, the, die Achtung
 esteem, to, achten
 European, europäisch
 evaporate, to, verdunsten
 even, selbst, sogar; even down to, sogar bis (zur Zeit)
 evening, der Abend; in the —, des Abends, abends
 event, the, der Vorfall, -s, -e; die Begebenheit, *pl. -en*; das Ereignis, -fß, -ffe; der Erfolg, -s, -e
 ever, immer; for —, auf immer
 every, jeder, -e, -es
 everywhere, überall, allenthalben
 evil, the, das Leiden, -s, —; das Übel, -s, —
 exactly, genau, richtig
 exaggeration, the, die Übertreibung, *pl. -en*
 examination, the, die Prüfung, *pl. -en*; das Examen, -s, -ina
 examine, to, prüfen, examinieren, untersuchen
 example, the, das Beispiel, -s, -e
 exceedingly, überaus
 except, ausgenommen

exception, the, die Ausnahme, *pl. -n*
 excessively, ungemein
 excite, to, aufregen, *w. v. sep.*
 excitement, the, die Aufregung
 exclude, to, ausschließen, *str. v. sep.*
 excuse, the, die Entschuldigung, *pl. -en*; to make —, sich entschuldigen
 excuse, to, entschuldigen
 execution, the, die Ausübung; (of a criminal), die Hinrichtung; to go to —, zur Richtstätte gehen
 exempt, to, befreien
 exercise, to, üben, ausüben, *w. v. sep.*; — power, Gewalt ausüben
 exhibit, to, bringen, *str. v.*, geben, *str. v.*
 exile, the (banishment), die Verbannung (banished person), der Verbannte
 exile, to, verbannen
 exist, to, da sein, existieren, seine Ersetzung machen
 existence, the, das Dasein, -s
 expect, to, vermuten, erwarten
 expectation, the, das Warten, die Erwartung, *pl. -en*; die Aussicht, *pl. -en*; — of life, die mutmaßliche Lebensdauer
 expense, the, die Ausgabe, *pl. -n*, der Aufwand, -s, no *pl.*
 expensive, kostspielig; on the most — scale, aufs kostspieligste
 experience, the, die Erfahrung, *pl. -en*
 experience, to, erfahren, *str. v. sep.*, die Erfahrung machen
 experiment, the, der Versuch, -es, -e; das Experiment, -es, -e
 exploit, the, die That, *pl. -en*
 expose, to, aussetzen, *str. v. sep.*
 exposure, die Fahrlässigkeit
 express, to, ausdrücken

expressly, ausdrücklich
 extant, to be, da sein, existieren
 extraordinary, außerordentlich
 extreme, the, das Extrem, -s, -e; die
 Übertreibung, *pl.* -en
 extremity of distress, die äußerste
 Bebrängnis, die größte Not
 eye, the, das Auge, -s, -n; (of a
 flower) der Stern, -s, -e.

F

face, the, das Gesicht, -es, -er; to
 his —, ins Gesicht
 face, to (a coat, dress), belegen
 fact, the, die Tatsache, *pl.* -n
 fact, in —, tatsächlich, als That-
 bestand
 faction, the, die Partei, *pl.* -en
 fail, to, verfehlen, den Dienst versagen,
 durchfallen, *str. v. sep.*, Fiasco
 machen; without —, unfehlbar
 failure, the, das Mißlingen, -s; der
 schlechte Erfolg, -s, -e
 faint, *adj.* matt
 fair or foul, gut oder übel, durch
 Güte oder mit Gewalt
 fairly, so ziemlich
 fairy, the, die Fee, *pl.* -n
 fairyland, the, das Feenland, -s,
 -er
 faith, to have — in, aufs Wort
 glauben
 fall, to, fallen, *str. v.*
 fallow, brach; *subst.* die Brache, das
 Brachfeld
 familiar, wohlbekannt
 familiarity, the, die Vertrautheit,
 genaue Bekanntschaft
 family, the, die Familie, *pl.* -n
 fancied, eingebildet
 fanciful, phantastisch
 fancy, to, glauben, sich einbilden

far, weit; to be — behind, weit
 zurückstehen, *str. v. sep.*; to go —
 into a thing, tief in eine Sache
 gehen, *str. v.*
 farewell, lebewohl
 farm, the, die Meierei, *pl.* -en; —
 buildings, die Wirtschaftsgebäude
 farmyard, the, der Hof, -es, -e;
 der Bauernhof
 farm, to, verpachten
 farming, der Ackerbau, -s,
 fascinate, to, bezaubern
 fashion, the, die Mode, *pl.* -n
 fashionable, modisch
 fast, schnell
 fasten, to, befestigen
 fastness, the, die Feste, *pl.* -n
 fatal, verderblich, verhängnisvoll
 fate, the, das Schicksal, -s, -e
 fault, the, der Fehler, -s, —; it is
 his —, es ist seine Schuld
 favour, the, die Gunst, in —, zu
 Gunsten
 favourite, the, der Liebling; —
 sister, die Lieblingschwester; —
 study, das Lieblingsstudium, -s,
 -en
 fear, the, die Furcht, no *pl.*
 feat, die Heldenthat, -en; das Kunst-
 stück, -s, -e
 feathered, gefiedert
 feature, the, der Zug, -es, -e
 feebly, schwächlich
 feed, to, füttern, fressen, *str. v.*
 feel, to, fühlen
 feeling, the, das Gefühl, -s, -e
 felon, the, der Verbrecher, -s, —
 fellow, the, der Kerl, -s, -e; der
 Burtsche, -n, -n; der Mitmensche,
 -en, -en
 fellow-citizen, the, der Mitbürger,
 -s, —

fellow-creature, das Mitgeschöpf, -s, -e; der Mitmensch, -en, -en
 female, weiblich
 female, the, die weibliche Person, *pl.* -en; das Frauenzimmer, -s, —
 feudal, feudal
 fiction, the, die Dichtung, Erfindung, *pl.* -en; die Fiktion, *pl.* -en
 fidelity, the, die Treue
 fiddler, the, der Fiedler, -s, —; der Fiedelspieler
 field, the, das Feld, -s, -er
 field-marshal, the, der Feldmarschall, -s, —
 fifty, fünfzig
 fight, to, kämpfen (mit), fechten, *str.* v., sich schlagen, *str.* v.; — a battle, eine Schlacht liefern, schlagen
 figure, the, die Figur, *pl.* -en; die Gestalt, *pl.* -en; die Erscheinung, *pl.* -en; die Zahl, *pl.* -en
 fill, to, füllen, erfüllen
 film, the, der Niederschlag, -s, —e; das Häutchen, -s, —
 finances, die Finanzen
 find, to, finden, *str.* v.
 find out, to, ermitteln, entdecken, heraus finden, *str.* v.
 fine, schön; in —, kurz
 finish off, to, vollenden
 finished, fertig
 fire, the, das Feuer, -s, —
 firm, fest
 first, the, der, die, das erste; at —, erst, zuerst
 fish, to, fischen; to go a fishing, fischen gehen
 fisherman, the, der Fischer, -s, —
 fishing-rod, die Angelrute, *pl.* -n
 fishing season, the, die Zeit des Fischeangs
 fishing tackle, the, das Fischegerät, -s

fishmonger, der Fischehändler, -s, —
 fit, the, der Anfall, -s, —e
 fit, to, zurechten, *v. v. sep.*; zurecht machen, zubereiten, einrichten, herstellen, passen
 fit, *adj.*, passend; to be — for, passen
 fitness, the, die Schicklichkeit
 fix, to, befestigen
 flat, flach
 flatness, the, die Flachheit
 flavour, the, der Wohlgeschmack, -s das Aroma, -s
 fleet, the, die Flotte, *pl.* -n
 flippant, frivol, schimpfisch
 float, to, schwimmen, *str.* v.
 flog, to, prügeln, to be flogged, Prügel bekommen, *str. v. insep.*
 flood, the, die Flut, *pl.* -en; floods, die Überschwemmung
 floor, the, der Boden, -s, —
 flow, to, fließen, *str.* v.
 flower, the, die Blume, *pl.* -n; die Blüte, *pl.* -n
 fluency, the, die Geläufigkeit
 fluid, the, die Flüssigkeit, *pl.* -en
 flushed, glühend, erhitzt
 flushed with health, von Gesundheit strotzend
 flute-player, the, der Flötenbläser, -s, —
 flutter, to, beben, zittern, zagen
 fly, the, die Fliege, *pl.* -n
 fly, to, fliegen, *str.* v.
 folding-doors, the, die Flügelthüren
 folding-screen, die spanische Wand, *pl.* —e
 follow, to, an occupation, einem Geschäfte nachgehen, *str. v. sep.*
 fond, zärtlich, liebevoll
 fond, to be, lieben, gern haben, ein Liebhaber von etwas sein

food, the, die Nahrung, *pl.* -en; (of animals), das Futter, -s
 fool, the, der Narr, -en, -en
 foolish, nährisch, thöricht, dumm
 foot, the, der Fuß, -es, -e
 footing, the, der Fuß
 footman, the, der Lakai, -s, -en
 for, *prep.* für; *conj.* denn
 force, the, die Gewalt, *pl.* -en; die Stärke; die Kraft, -e
 forefather, the, der Vorfahr, -s, -en
 forehead, the, die Stirn, *pl.* -en
 foreign, fremd, ausländisch
 foreigner, the, der Ausländer, -s, —
 foremost place, a, einer der ersten Plätze
 forgive, to, vergeben, *str. v. insep.*
 fork, the, die Gabel, *pl.* -n
 form, the, die Gestalt, *pl.* -en; die Form, *pl.* -en; in —, förmlich
 form, to, schaffen, erschaffen, bilden; — an opinion, eine Meinung fassen, sich bilden
 formidable, furchtbar
 formula, the, die Formel, *pl.* -n
 fortunately, glücklicherweise
 fortune, the, das Vermögen, -s; das Glück, -s; der Reichtum, -s, -er
 forty, vierzig
 forward, to go, nach vorn gehen, auf die Bad (forecastle) gehen, *str. v.*
 foul, häßlich, garstig
 found, to, gründen
 foundation, the, die Grundlage, *pl.* -n; das Fundament, -s, -e
 four, vier
 fowl, the, das Guhn, -s, -er
 frame, the, der Körper, -s, —
 France, Frankreich
 frank, *adj.*, fränkisch
 Frederic, Friedrich

freeze, to, frieren, *str. v.*
 French, französisch
 frequency, the, die Häufigkeit, die Menge, *pl.* -n; to increase in —, häufiger werden
 frequent, häufig; to be in — use, gewöhnlich gebraucht werden, in gewöhnlichem Gebrauch sein
 frequently, oft, häufig
 fresh, frisch, neu; the freshest, der, die, das neueste, letzte
 friendless, freundlich
 friendly, freundlich, freundschaftlich
 friendship, the, die Freundschaft, *pl.* -en
 fright, the, der Schrecken, -s, —
 frighten, to, erschrecken, *w. v. insep.*
 frightful, schrecklich
 frog, the, der Frosch, -es, -e
 front, in, vor, grade vor
 frozen, gefroren
 fruit basket, der Obstkorb, -s, -e
 fruit shop, the, der Obstladen, -s, -en
 full, voll, vollständig
 fully, völlig, vollständig
 function, the, die Funktion, *pl.* -en; die Verrichtung, *pl.* -en
 fund, the, das Vermögen, -s, -er
 furnish, to, geben, *str. v.*; gewähren; (a house) möblieren
 future, the, die Zukunft
 future, *adj.*, künftigt, zukünftig.

G

gain, to, erwerben, *str. v. insep.*; gewinnen, *str. v. insep.*
 gale, the, der Sturm, -s, -e; der Wind, -es, -e
 gallant, munter, wacker, tapfer
 gallery, the, die Galerie, *pl.* -n
 game, the, das Spiel, -s, -e

garden, the, der Garten, -s, —
 gardening, the, die Gärtnerei, der
 Gartenbau
 garden seat, the, die Gartenbank,
pl. —e
 garret, the, die Dachstube, *pl.* -n;
 die Bodenkammer, *pl.* -n
 gate, the, das Thor, -s; -e; (leading
 to a field) die Gatterthüre, *pl.* -n
 gather, to, sammeln, (of flowers)
 pflücken
 gaze, to, blicken, betrachten, anschauen
 gazette, to, im Staatsanzeiger (of-
 fiziell) anzeigen; he was gazetted
 to B., seine Versetzung nach B.
 wurde offiziell angezeigt
 general, allgemein
 general, the, der General, -s, -e or
 —e; der Feldherr, -n, -en
 generation, the, die Generation, -en;
 die Zeitgenossen (*pl.*)
 generous, edel
 genius, the, das Genie, -s, -s
 genteel, vornehm, anständig
 gentility, the, die Vornehmheit; no
 great degree of —, keine besondere
 Vornehmheit
 gentle, sanft
 gentlefolk, der Adel, -s
 gentleman, the, der Herr, -n, -en;
 der Ehrenmann, Mann von Ehre,
 der gebildete Mensch, Gentleman
 gentry, the, der niedere Adel, die
 Grundbesitzer, die Vornehmeren
 geranium, the, der Storchschnabel,
 -s
 German, deutsch
 Germanic, germanisch
 Germany, Deutschland
 gesture, the, die Gebärde, *pl.* -n
 get, to, kriegen, erhalten, *str. v. sep.*
 get anywhere, to, wo hinkommen

get away, to, weglaufen, fortlaufen,
str. v. sep.
 get in (the harvest), to, (die Ernte)
 einbringen, *str. v. sep.*
 get on, to, weiter kommen, *str. v.*;
 fortfahren, *str. v. sep.*
 get over, to, übersteigen, *str. v. in-*
sep., or über etwas steigen
 get up, to, aufstehen, *str. v. sep.*
 get well, to, sich erholen, gesund
 werden, genesen, *str. v.*
 giddy, schwindlig
 gift, the, die Gabe, *pl.* -n
 give, to, geben, *str. v.*
 give birth, to, erzeugen
 give off, to, abgeben, *str. v. sep.*
 glad, froh; to be glad, froh sein, sich
 freuen; I am glad, es freut mich
 glance, to, einen Blick werfen (auf),
str. v.
 glass, the, das Glas, -es, —er
 glassy, durchsichtig
 glide from, to, entschwinden, *str. v.*
sep.
 glimmer, the, der Schimmer, -s
 glimpse, the, die Mutmaßung, -en
 glitter, to, glänzen, blitzen
 glory, the, der Ruhm, -s, no *pl.*;
 der Glanz, -es, no *pl.*; die Herr-
 lichkeit, *pl.* -en
 go, to, gehen, *str. v.*; — home,
 nach Hause gehen
 go back, to, zurückgehen, *str. v. sep.*
 go on, to, fortfahren, *str. v. sep.*;
 vorgehen, *str. v. sep.*; passieren
 godfather, the, der Pate, -n, -n
 gold, das Gold; — watch, die
 goldne Uhr
 gold-headed cane, the, der Spazier-
 stoch mit goldnem Knopfe
 gold lace, Goldborte, a —laced
 hat, ein Hut mit goldnen Treffen

gold-laced, mit goldnen Borten
 good, tüchtig, gut
 good-natured, gutmütig
 gorge, the, die Schlucht, *pl.* -en
 gospel, the, das Evangelium, -s, -en
 gossip, the, der Klatschbeter, -s, -n;
 das Waschweib, -s, -er (said of
 both sexes)
 governess, the, die Erzieherin, *pl.*
 -nen; die Gouvernante, *pl.* -n
 government, the, die Regierung, *pl.*
 -en
 grace, the, die Gnade
 graceful, reizend
 gracious, gnädig
 gradually, allmählich
 grain of corn, a, ein Weizenkorn, -s,
 -er
 grammar, grammar-book, die
 Grammatik, -en
 grandeur, the, die Größe
 grandpapa, Großpapa, -s, -s
 grandsire, the, der Großvater, -s,
 -er
 grant, to, erteilen, bewilligen, ge-
 währen, erfüllen, verleihen, *str.* v.
insep.
 grass, the, das Gras, -seß, -fer
 grateful, dankbar
 grave, wichtig, ernst
 great, groß
 Great Britain, Großbritannien
 greatly, sehr, bedeutend
 greceise, to, gräßifizieren
 Greece, Griechenland, -s
 Greek, griechisch
 Greek, the, der Grieche, -n, -n
 grenadier, the, der Grenadier, -s,
 -e
 grey, grau
 greyish, grünlich
 grievance, the, die Beschwerde, *pl.*

-en; der Beschwerdgrund, -es,
 -e
 grimace, the, die Grimasse, *pl.* -n
 grin, the, das Grinsen, -s
 grotesque, grotesk
 ground, the, der Boden, -s; der
 Erdboden, -s; der Grund, -es; die
 Erde
 grovel, to, kriechen, *str.* v.
 grow better, to, besser werden, sich
 erholen, genesen, *str.* v.
 grown up, vollgewachsen, ausge-
 wachsen
 growth, the, das Wachstum, -s
 gruff, barsch
 grumble, to, brummen, — at, an-
 brummen
 guard, the, die Garde, *pl.* -n; der
 Wächter, -s, —; (of a coach or
 train), der Schaffner, -s, —; der
 Kondukteur, -s, -e
 Guelphic order, the, der Welfen-
 orden, -s
 guess, the, die Mutmaßung
 guess, to, mutmaßen, *v. insep.*;
 raten, *str.* v.
 guilt, the, die Schuld
 guinea, the, die Guinee, *pl.* -n
 gun, the, die Finte, *pl.* -n;
 (artillery), das Geschütz, -es, -e
 gypsum, der Gips, -seß.

H

habit, the, die Gewohnheit, *pl.* -en
 habitual, angewöhnt, zur Gewohn-
 heit geworden
 Hahnemaniac, Hahnemann-verrückt
 hail, to, begrüßen
 hair, the, das Haar, -es, -e
 half, *adj.* halb; *subst.* die Hälfte,
pl. -n

half-crown, the, die halbe Krone,
pl. -n
 hall, the, der Saussflur, -s
 halve, to, halbieren, teilen
 hammer, the, der Hammer, -s, —
 hand, the, die Hand, *pl. -e*
 hand, to be at, nahe sein
 hand down, to, übermitteln, *insep.*
 handbill, the, der Anschlag, -s, —
 handle, the, der Griff, -es, -e; (of a
 gate), der Riegel, -s, —
 handsome, hübsch
 hang down, to, herunterhängen
 hangman, the, der Henker, -s, —
 Hanse-town, the, die Hansestadt,
pl. -e
 happen, to, geschehen, *str. v. imp.*
 happiness, the, das Glück, -s,
 happy, glücklich
 harass, to, quälen, ermüden
 harbour, the, der Hafen, -s, —
 hard, schwer, stark
 hardly, kaum
 harm, the, der Schaden, -s, —
 harmonise, to, übereinstimmen, *sep.*
 harness, to, anspannen, schirren
 Harriet, Henriette
 harvest, the, die Ernte; — time,
 die Erntezeit
 hasty, hastily, hastig, eilig; very
 —, sehr eilig, in großer Eile
 hateful, verhaßt, häßlich
 haunt, the, der gewöhnliche Aufent-
 haltort, -s, —
 have, to, haben, besitzen, *str. v.*
insep.; — made, machen lassen;
 had we not rather, sollten wir
 nicht lieber
 hazy, neblig
 head, the, der Kopf, -s, —
 health, the, die Gesundheit, *pl. -en*
 hear, to, hören

heart, the, das Herz, -en, -en
 heart, to know by, auswendig
 wissen, *str. v.*
 heartily, herzlich
 heartless, herzlos
 heat, the, die Hitze; heated, in der
 Hitze
 heath, the, die Heide, *pl. -n*
 heaven, the, der Himmel, -s, —
 heavy, schwer
 Hebrew, hebräisch
 hedge, the, die Hecke, *pl. -n*; from
 behind a —, aus dem Versteck
 hinter einer Hecke
 height, the, die Höhe, *pl. -n*
 heighten, to, erhöhen, (of colour)
 sich dunkler färben
 Hellenic, hellenisch
 helmet, the, der Helm, -s, -e
 help, to, helfen, *str. v.*
 help oneself (at dinner), to, sich
 bedienen
 help, I cannot, ich kann nicht umhin
 zu, ich muß
 helpless, hilflos
 hen, the, die Henne, *pl. -n*
 hence, von jetzt ab; years —, nach
 Jahren
 Henry, Heinrich
 here, hier
 hereditary, erblich
 hero, the, der Held, -en, -en; der
 Heros, *pl. -oen*
 herself, selbst
 hesitate, to, anstehen, *str. v. sep.*;
 sich bedenken, *str. v. insep.*
 hesitation, the, das Bedenken, -s,
 —; das Zaudern, -s
 hide, to, verbergen, *str. v. insep.*;
 sich verbergen
 high, hoch
 Highland, the, das Hochland, -s, -e

- high priest, the, der Hohe Priester,
des Hohen Priesters, die Hohen
Priester
- high tide, the, das Hochwasser
- highwayman, the, der Straßen-
räuber, -s, —
- hill, the, der Hügel, -s, —
- him, *acc.* ihn, *dat.* ihm
- himself, sich
- hint, to, bemerken
- hire, to, mieten; a hired horse, ein
Mietpferd
- his, sein, -e, —
- hiss, to, zischen
- historical, historisch, geschichtlich
- history, the, die Geschichte, *pl.* -n
- hit, to, treffen, *str. v.*
- hitherto, bisher
- hoard, to, beiseite legen, auffammeln
- hold on, to, festhalten, *str. v. sep.*
- hold, the, die Nacht, *pl.* -e; —
upon, Nacht über
- hole, the, das Loch, -s, -er
- holidays, die Ferien (*pl.*)
- Holland, Holland
- home, the, das Heim, -s; die Heimat;
das Inland
- home, at, zu Hause
- home, to go, nach Hause gehen; to
take —, nach Hause tragen
- home-sick, an Heimweh leiden
- homewards, nach Hause, heimwärts
- homœopathic, homöopathisch
- honour, the, die Ehre, *pl.* -n, and
Ehrenbezeugungen
- honourable, ehrenhaft, ehrenwert
- Honourable, as prefix to a lady's
name, die Freifrau, das Frei-
fräulein
- honours, Ehrenbezeugungen
- hook, the, der Haken, -s, —; die
Angel, *pl.* -n
- hope, the, die Hoffnung, *pl.* -en
- horse, the, das Pferd, -es, -e
- horseback, on, zu Pferde
- horrible, grauſig
- horror, the, der Abscheu, -s
- host, the, der Wirt, -s, -e
- hospitality, die Gastfreundschaft
- hot, heiß
- hotel, the, das Hotel, -s, -s; das
Wirtshaus, -es, -er
- house, the, das Haus, -es, -er
- household, heimisch, traut
- housekeeper, the, die Wirtschafterin,
Haushälterin
- housekeeping, the, die Haushaltung,
der Haushalt; in a — way, in
haushalterischer Beziehung
- House of Commons, the, das Haus
der Gemeinen
- hovel, the, die Hütte, *pl.* -n
- however, jedoch
- huge, kolossal, gewaltig, überaus groß
- human race, the, das Menschen-
geschlecht, -s, -er
- humanity, the, die Menschlichkeit
- humble, bescheiden, gering, niedrig,
unterthänig
- humiliating, erniedrigend
- humility, the, die Demut
- humour, the, die Laune, *pl.* -n
- hurry, to, eilen
- hurt, to, wehe thun, beleidigen
- husband, the, der Mann, -es, -er;
der Ehemann
- hut, the, die Hütte, *pl.* -n.

I

- I, ich
- ideal, ideal
- identify, to, identifizieren
- ignominy, the, die Schande
- ignorance, the, die Unwissenheit

ignorant, unwissen
 Iliad, the, die Iliade
 ill, krank; (at sea), seekrank
 ill-bred, unhöflich, ungezogen
 illegal, ungesetzlich
 illegible, unleserlich
 illness, the, die Krankheit, *pl.* -en
 illusion, the, die Verblendung, *pl.* -en; der Irrtum, -s, -er
 illustrate, to, erläutern, in ein helleres Licht setzen, beleuchten; berühmt machen
 illustrious, glorreich
 image, the, das Bildnis, -ßes, -ße; das Ebenbild, -es, -er
 imaginary, eingebildet, phantastisch
 imagine, to, sich denken, *str. v.*; sich einbilden, *sep.*; erfinden, *str. v. insep.*
 imaginings (*pl.*), die Einbildung (*sing.*), eingebildete Sachen (*pl.*)
 imitate, to, nachahmen
 immense, ungeheuer, unermesslich
 immoral, unmoralisch
 immortal, unsterblich
 impair, to, schwächen
 impart, to, mittheilen, *sep.*
 impediment, the, das Hindernis, -ßes, -ße
 imperial, kaiserlich
 imperious, befehlshaberisch
 imperfect, unvollkommen
 implacably, unversöhnlich
 implore, to, anflehen, *sep. v. v.*
 importance, the, die Wichtigkeit
 important, wichtig
 importunate, zubringlich
 impose, to, aufzwingen, *str. v. sep.*
 impose upon, to, täuschen
 impossible, unmöglich
 impossibility, the, die Unmöglichkeit
 impostor, the, der Betrüger, -s, —

impression, the, der Eindruck, -s, -e
 improve, to, benutzen, verbessern
 improvement, the, die Verbesserung, *pl.* -en
 imprudent, unflug
 inasmuch, da, insofern
 inauguration, the (of a new era), der Beginn einer neuen Zeitrechnung
 incessant, unaufhörlich
 incessantly, unaufhörlich
 incident, the, der Vorfall, -s, -e
 inclination, the, die Neigung, *pl.* -en; to be without —, nicht geneigt sein
 incline, to, geneigt sein
 income, the, das Einkommen
 increase, the, die Vermehrung, Erhöhung
 increase, to, zunehmen, *str. v. sep.*; vermehren, sich vermehren, vergrößern, wachsen, *str. v.*; — in frequency, sich an Zahl vermehren
 incrust, to, mit einer Kruste belegen; thickly incrust, mit einer dicken Kruste belegt
 incur, to, ausgesetzt sein, sich aussetzen
 indeed, in der That, wirklich, ja wohl
 indemnify, to, entschädigen
 independence, the, die Unabhängigkeit
 independent, unabhängig
 India, Indien
 Indian, indisch
 indicate, to, andeuten, *w. v. sep.*
 Indies, the, Indien
 indifference, the, die Gleichgültigkeit
 indigence, the, die Noth, die Armut
 indignant, entrüstet; — smile, ein Lächeln des Unwillens

individual, the, die Person, *pl.* -en;
 das Individuum, -s, -en; der
 Einzelne, -n, -n
 individual, individuell
 individual advantage, persönlicher
 Vorteil
 induce, to, bewegen, *str.* or *w.*
 industrial, industriell, gewerblich;
 — buildings, Fabriken
 industrialism, the, die Gewerbe-
 thätigkeit
 industry, the, der Fleiß, der Ge-
 werbfleiß, -es
 inevitable, unvermeidlich
 inexorable, unerbittlich
 inexpensive, nicht kostspielig, billig
 infant son, the, der unmündige
 Sohn
 inference, the, der Folgeschluß, -fßes,
 —fße
 inferior, untergeordnet
 infest, to, unsicher machen
 inflexible, nicht zu biegen, unbeugsam
 inflict, to, auferlegen, *str. v. sep.*
 influence, to, beeinflussen
 influence, the, der Einfluß, -fßes
 informed, unterrichtet, gebildet
 infuse, to, einflößen, *sep.*
 ingenious, sinnig, erfindungsreich
 ingenuity, the, der Scharfsinn, -s
 inhabitant, the, der Einwohner,
 -s, —
 inheritance, the, das Erbteil, -s, -e
 initial letter, the, der Anfangsbuch-
 stabe, -ens, -en
 injure, to, beleidigen, jemandem wehe
 thun, etwas zu leiden thun
 injustice, the, die Ungerechtigkeit,
pl. -en
 ink, the, die Tinte
 ink, to, mit Tinte schwärzen
 inmate, the, der Gast, -es, —e

inn, the, das Wirtshaus, -ses, —fer
 innkeeper, the, der Gastwirt, -s, -e
 inquire, to, nachfragen, *w. v. sep.*;
 sich erkundigen, Nachfrage machen,
 fragen
 inquiry, the, die Erkundigung, *pl.*
 -en; die Nachfrage, *pl.* -n
 inscribe, to, widmen, dedizieren
 inscription, the, die Inschrift, *pl.* -en
 inside, the, das Innere, -n
 insight, the, die Kenntnis, *pl.* -fße
 insist, to, auf etwas bestehen, *str. v.*
insep.
 insolence, the, der Übermut, -s; die
 Unverschämtheit
 inspire, to, erwecken, erregen, be-
 geistern; a man inspired, ein Be-
 geisteter
 instantly, sogleich
 instead, anstatt
 instruction, the, der Unterricht, no
pl.; die Belehrung, *pl.* -en
 instructive, lehrreich, belehrend
 instrument, the, das Werkzeug, -s,
 -e; — of torture, das Marterwerk-
 zeug
 insult, the, die Beleidigung, -en
 insupportable, unüberwindlich
 intelligence, the, die Einsicht, die
 Intelligenz; (news), die Nachricht,
pl. -en
 intend, to, meinen
 intention, the, das Vorhaben, -s;
 die Absicht, *pl.* -en
 interest, the, das Interesse, -s, -en
 interest, to, interessieren
 interfere, to, beeinträchtigen, *insep.*;
 sich einmischen, *sep.*
 interference, the, die Beeinträchti-
 gung, die Einmischung, *pl.* -en
 interrupt, to, unterbrechen, *str. v.*
insep.

intersect, to, durchschneiden, *str. v. insep.*; kreuzen
 interview, the, die Zusammenkunft, *pl. -e*
 into, in
 introduce, to, einführen
 introduction, the, die Einführung
 intruder, the, der ungebetene Gast, -es, -e; der Eindringling, -s, -e
 invader, the, der Eroberer, -s, —; der Einbringling, -s, -e
 invalid, the, der Invalid, -n, -n
 invest, to, some one with an order, jemandem einen Orden verleihen, *str. v. insep.*
 invincible, unüberwindlich
 invitation, the, die Einladung, *pl. -en*
 inviolable, unverbrüchlich
 invisible, unsichtbar
 invulnerable, unverwundbar
 Ireland, Irland
 Irish, irisch
 Irishman, the, der Ire, -s, —
 Irishwoman, die Irin, *pl. -innen*
 iron, the, das Eisen, -s; of —, *adj.* eisern; iron-filings, Eisenspäne
 irreclaimable, nicht zu retten, unrettbar
 irresistible, unüberwindlich
 irritation, the, die Aufregung, die Erbitterung
 issue, the, die Nachkommenschaft
 it, es, ihn, sie
 Italy, Italien
 Italian, italienisch
 itself, selbst, an und für sich.

J

jam-pot, the, der Brustopf, -es, -e
 January, der Januar

jest, the, der Spaß, -es, -e
 Jew, the, der Jude, -n, -n
 jewel, das Juwel, -s, -en
 jeweller, der Juwelier, -s, -e
 job, the, das Geschäft, -s, -e; die Arbeit, *pl. -en*
 Joe Miller (a jest-book), Meidinger
 jog-trot, von gewöhnlichem Schläge; —men, Bummel
 join, to, verbinden, *str. v. insep.*; sich anschließen, *str. v. sep.*; joined with, zusammen mit
 judge, the (connoisseur), der Kenner, -s, —; (law-officer), der Richter, -s, —
 judge, to, urteilen
 jurisdiction, the, die obrigkeitliche Gewalt
 jurisprudence, the, die Jurisprudenz, die Rechtswissenschaft
 just, billig, gerecht
 just now, jetzt eben, grade jetzt
 just as, grade so, ebenso
 justice, the, die Gerechtigkeit
 justify, to, rechtfertigen, *insep.*
 juxtaposition, the, die Nebeneinanderstellung; in —, neben einander.

K

keep, to, halten, behalten, *str. v.*; — at bay, in Schach (in Respekt) halten; — company, Gastfreundschaft üben, Diners geben, *str. v.*; — in good health, gesund bleiben, *str. v.*; — from school, aus der Schule wegbehalten, *str. v. sep.*
 keeper, the, der Wärter, -s, —
 key, the, der Schlüssel, -s, —
 kick, to, stoßen, *str. v.*; ausschlagen, *str. v. sep.*
 kill, to, töten

kind, the, die Art, *pl.* -en; die Sorte, *pl.* -n

kind, kindly, gut, gütig, freundlich

king, the, der König, -s, -e

kingdom, the, das Königreich, -s, -e

kinswoman, the, die Verwandte, -n, -n

kiss, to, küssen

kitchen, die Küche, *pl.* -n

kite, the, der Drachen, -s, —

kitten, the, das Kätzchen, -s, —

knapsack, the, der Tornister, -s, —;

das Ränzlel, -s, —

knee, the, das Knie, *pl.* -e

kneel, to, knien

knife, the, das Messer, -s, —;

the pocket-knife, das Taschennesser

knight, the, der Ritter, -s, —

knight, to, zum Ritter schlagen, *str. v.*; in den Ritterstand erheben, *str. v. insep.*; adeln

knighthood, the, die Ritterwürde

knot, the, der Knoten, -s, —

knot, to, knoten, zusammen knoten

know, to (recognise a thing, a person, *Fr. connaître*), kennen, *irr. v.*; (knowledge acquired by the mind), wissen, *irr. v.*

knowledge, the, die Kenntnis, die Erkenntnis, *pl.* -isse; die Erfahrung, *pl.* -en; das Wissen, -s

known, bekannt.

L

labarum, the, das Labarum, -s

labour, the, die Arbeit, *pl.* -en

labour under, to, an etwas leiden, *str. v.*

labourer, the, der Arbeiter, -s, —

laborious, mühsam

laboriously, mit Not und Mühe

lad, the, der Burſche, -n, -n

lade, to, laden, beladen

lady, the, die Dame, *pl.* -n

lake, the, der See, -s, -en

lamb, the, das Lamm, -s, -er

lamp, the, die Lampe, *pl.* -n

land, to, landen

landlord, the, der Grundbesitzer, -s, —

lane, the, der Pfad, -s, -e

languish, to, darnieder liegen, *str. v.*

large, groß

last, *adj.* der, die, das letzte

last night, gestern Abend

last, at, endlich

late, spät

later, später; — times, die neuere Zeit

laugh, the, das Gelächter, -s, —; das Lachen, -s

laugh, to, lachen

laughing matter, a, ein Spaß; no — kein Spaß, nicht zum lachen

law, the, das Gesetz, -es, -e

lawn, the, der Rasenplatz, -es, -e

lawyer, the, der Advokat, -en, -en

lay down, to, (a law, rule), hinstellen

lea, the, das Wiesenland, Grasland, -s, -er

lead, to, führen

lead to a state of things, to, Zustände (eine Lage der Dinge) verursachen

leader, the, der Führer, -s, —

lean, to, lehnen, sich lehnen

learn, to, lernen

learned, gelehrt; the — man, der Gelehrte, -n, -n

learning, the, die Gelehrsamkeit, die Kenntnisse (*pl.*)

lease, to, verpachten, — to, an

least, the, der geringste
 least, at, wenigstens, am wenigsten
 leather, the, das Leder, -s
 leave, the, die Erlaubnis; to ask
 —, um Erlaubnis bitten
 leave, to, lassen, *str. v.*, verlassen,
str. v. insep.; — behind, zurück-
 lassen, *str. v. sep.*; hinterlassen,
st. v. insep.
 lecture, the, die Vorlesung, *pl. -en*
 left, links; to the —, zur linken
 leg, the, das Bein, -s, -e
 legion, the, die Legion, *pl. -en*
 leisure, the, die Muße; at our —,
 wenn es uns gefällt, gefiele
 lend, to, leihen, *str. v.*
 length, at, endlich
 lengthen, to, verlängern
 lengthiness, the, die Weiterschweifigkeit
 less, weniger
 lesson, the, die Lektion, -en
 let, to, lassen, *str. v.*
 let, to (on hire), vermieten
 let in, to, hereinlassen, *str. v. sep.*
 let us understand, wir wollen
 versuchen zu erklären
 letter, the, der Brief, -s, -e; — of
 introduction, der Empfehlungs-
 brief, das Empfehlungsschreiben
 letter (of the alphabet), the, der
 Buchstabe, -ens, -n
 level, eben
 level, the, die gleiche Höhe, das
 Niveau (French)
 levity, the, der Leichtsin; a tone of
 —, ein leichtsinniger Ton
 levy, the, die Aushebung von Trup-
 pen
 levy, to, erheben, *str. v. insep.*
 liberal, mildthätig, freisinnig, liberal
 liberality, the, die Freigebigkeit
 liberty, the, die Freiheit, *pl. -en*; —

of speaking and writing, Rede-
 und Pressfreiheit
 library, the, die Bibliothek, *pl. -en*
 licence, the, die Zügellosigkeit, -en;
 die Erlaubnis
 lid, the, der Deckel, -s, —
 lie, to, liegen, *str. v.*
 life, das Leben, -s, *pl. unusual*
 lift, to, heben, *str. v.*; aufheben,
str. v. sep.; — the veil, den
 Schleier lüften
 light, the, das Licht, -s, *pl. -e and*
-er
 light, to, erleuchten
 light, *adj.*, leicht, unbedeutend
 light-coloured, hellfarbig, von heller
 Farbe
 like, *adj.*, ähnlich
 like, *adv.*, wie, gleich wie
 like, to, gern haben (essen, trinken);
 Gefallen an etwas finden; mögen;
 lieben; he likes it, es gefällt ihm
 likely, to be, geeignet sein
 likely, to seem, geeignet scheinen
 likewise, gleichfalls, gleicherweise,
 ebenso, auch
 limited, beschränkt, eingeschränkt
 line, the (cord), die Leine, *pl. -en*
 (in geometry), die Linie, *pl. -n*
 linen, the, die Wäsche, das Leinzeug
 ling, the, der Lenz
 linger, to, zögern
 lion, the, der Löwe, -n, -n
 list, the, die Liste, *pl. -n*
 literary, literarisch
 literary character, the, der Schrift-
 steller, -s, —
 literature, the, die Literatur, *p. -en*
 little, klein, gering
 live, to, leben
 lively, lebendig
 living, lebend

living room, die Wohnstube, *pl. -n*; das Wohnzimmer, -s, —
 load, to, laden, *str. v.*
 loathsome, widrig, ekelhaft
 lobster, der Hummer, -s, —
 lodgings, die Wohnung, *pl. -en*; das Logis
 lofty, erhaben
 Lombard, *adj.*, lombardisch, lango-
 bardisch
 long, *adj.*, lang; *adv.*, lange, or
 after the *subst.* lang; long since,
 schon lange; no longer, nicht
 mehr
 long-lived, langlebig
 look, the, der Blick, -s, -e; der
 Ausdruck, -s
 look, to, sehen, *str. v.*
 look, to (appear), aussehn, *str. v. sep.*
 look at, to, ansehen, *str. v. sep.*
 look into, to, hineinsehen, *str. v. sep.*
 look to, to, auf jemanden blicken,
 sehen
 look like, to, aussehn wie, *str. v. sep.*; eine Miene annehmen, *str. v. sep.*
 look upon, to, ansehen, *str. v. sep.*; auf jemanden sehen
 looks, the, das Aussehen, -s, no *pl.*
 Lord, the, der Herr, -n, -en
 Lord's Prayer, the, das Vaterunser, -s; das Gebet des Herrn
 Lorraine, Lothringen
 lose, to, verlieren, *str. v. insep.*
 lose the way, to, sich verirren
 loss, the, der Verlust, -s, -e,
 lottery, the, die Lotterie, *pl. -n*
 love, the, die Liebe
 love, to, lieben
 lovely, lieblich

low, niedrig; — life, das Knoten-
 leben, -s
 lowland, the, die Niederung, *pl. -en*
 lucky fellow, a, ein Glücksmensch, -en, -en
 lucrative, einträglich.

M

machine, the, die Maschine, *pl. -en*
 magic, magisch, zauberhaft
 magnificence, the, die Herrlichkeit
 maid, the, die Magd, *pl. -e*
 mail, the, die Post, *pl. -en*
 main, hauptsächlich
 maintain, to, aufrecht erhalten, *str. v. insep.*; verteidigen
 maintenance, the, die Erhaltung
 Majesty, His, Seine Majestät
 major, größer
 make, to, machen
 make sure, to, versichert sein
 make up one's mind, to, sich ent-
 schließen, *str. v. insep.*
 malady, the, die Krankheit, *pl. -en*
 male, männlich
 malt liquor, Spirituosen (*pl.*)
 mamma, the, die Mama, *pl. -s*
 man, the, der Mann, -s, -er;
 (human being), der Mensch, -en, -en
 manage, to, verwalten, behandeln
 manhood, the, das Mannesalter, -s
 manner, the, das Betragen, -s; das
 Wesen, -s; die Manier
 mankind, die Menschheit; das Men-
 schengeschlecht, -s, -er; die Menschen;
 die Leute
 manoeuvre, to, arbeiten
 mansion, the, das Schloß, -ffes, -ffer
 manufacture, to, fabrizieren, machen

marble, the, die Marmor; game at marbles, Marmorspiel	means, by any, jedenfalls, um des Himmels willen
march, to, marschieren	means, by no, keineswegs
mariner, the, der Seemann, -s, -leute; der Matrose, -n, -n	means, by some — or other, auf eine oder die andre Weise, irgendwie
maritime power, the, die Seemacht	measure, the, die Maßregel, <i>pl.</i> -n; to adopt, to take measures, Maßregeln treffen, <i>str. v.</i>
mark, to (linen), zeichnen; (distinguish), auszeichnen; (point out), bezeichnen	measure, to (clothes), anmessen, <i>str. v. sep.</i> ; das Maß nehmen, <i>str. v.</i>
marked out, bestimmt	mechanical, mechanisch
mark, the (coin), die Mark, <i>indecl.</i> ; (expression), der Ausdruck, -s	mechanically, mechanisch
marvellous, wunderbar	medal, the, die Medaille, <i>pl.</i> -n
master, the, der Herr, -n, -en; der Meister, -s, —; (of a school), der Direktor, -s, -en	medical man, the, der Arzt, -s, -e
master's wife, the, die Herrin; die Meisterin; die Frau Direktor; die Direktorin	medicine, the, die Medizin, die Arzneiwissenschaft
masked ball, the, der Maskenball, -s, -e	meditate, to, nachsinnen, <i>str. v. sep.</i> ; nachdenken, <i>str. v. sep.</i>
masterpiece, the, das Meisterstück, -s, -e	meditated, beabsichtigt
material, the, das Material, -s, -ien	meekly, sanftmütig
material, <i>adj.</i> , materiell	meet, to, begegnen; treffen, <i>str. v.</i> ; antreffen, <i>str. v. sep.</i>
matter, the, der Gegenstand, -es, -e; die Sache, <i>pl.</i> -n	memorable, merkwürdig
mattress, the, die Matratze, <i>pl.</i> -n	mend, to, flicken, ausbessern, <i>w. v. sep.</i>
mature, to, reifen	mention, to, erwähnen
may, mögen	merchant, the, der Kaufmann, -s, -leute
May, der Mai, -s	mercy, the, die Gnade
Mayence, Mainz	mere, nur, bloß
me, mich; of me, meiner; to me, mir	merely, nur, bloß
meadow, the, die Wiese, <i>pl.</i> -n	merit, the, das Verdienst, -es, -e
meagre, mager	method, the, die Methode, <i>pl.</i> -n
mean, to, meinen	metrical, metrisch, in gebundener Rede
mean, krauserig, geizig, gemein, erbärmlich	microscope, the, das Mikroskop, -s, -e
meaning, the, die Bedeutung, <i>pl.</i> -en	middle, the, die Mitte
means, the, die Mittel (<i>pl.</i>)	mile, the, die Meile, <i>pl.</i> -n
	military, militärisch

military expedition, the, der Kriegszug, -s, —
 military school, the, die Militär-
 schule, *pl.* -n
 mill, the, die Mühle, *pl.* -n
 mind, the, das Gemüt, -s, -er; der Geist, -es, -er; das Gedächtnis, -fess; die Erinnerung, *pl.* -en; der Gedanke, -ens, -en; die Meinung, *pl.* -en
 mind, to make up one's, sich entschließen, *str. v. insep.*
 mindful of, to be, sich erinnern an
 mineral, *adj.*, mineralisch
 minister, the, der Minister, -s, —
 minister of state, the, der Staats-
 minister, -s, —
 minister, to, dienen
 minute, the, die Minute, *pl.* -n
 minute, *adj.*, gering
 mischievous, schädlich
 misdeed, the, die Missethat, *pl.* -en
 miser, the, der Geizhals, -es, —
 misery, the, der Kummer, -s; der Gram, -s
 misfortune, the, das Unglück, -s, -fälle; das Mißgeschick, -s, -e
 misgovernment, the, die schlechte Regierung
 mislead, to, misleiten, irre führen
 mismanagement, the, die schlechte Führung, die schlechte Verwaltung
 Miss, Fräulein, -s, —; the Hon. —, Freifräulein
 miss, to, übergehen, *str. v. insep.*
 mistake, the, das Mißverständnis, -fess, -ffe; der Mißgriff, -s, -e
 mistaken, irrig, eitel
 misunderstanding, the, das Miß-
 verständnis, -fess, -ffe
 mixed, gemischt
 mob, the, der Pöbel, -s

mode, the, die Art, *pl.* -en; die Weise, *pl.* -n
 moderate, mäßig, bescheiden
 moderately, mäßig, einigermaßen
 modern, neu, heutig, modern, der jetzigen Zeit; — languages, die neueren Sprachen
 modification, the, die Veränderung, *pl.* -en
 moisture, the, die Feuchtigkeit, *pl.* -en
 moment, the, der Augenblick, -s, -e
 der Moment, -s, -e
 momentary, augenblicklich
 monarch, the, der Monarch, -en, -en; der Fürst, -en, -en; der Herrscher, -s, —
 monarchy, the, die Monarchie
 money, das Geld, -s, -er
 monk, the, der Mönch, -s, -e
 monogamy, the, die Monogamie
 monogram, the, das Monogramm, -s, -e
 mood, the, die Stimmung, *pl.* -en
 moon, the, der Mond, -es, -e
 morals, the, die Sitten
 morbid anatomy, the, die Patho-
 logie
 morning, the, der Morgen, -s, —; a — walk, ein Spaziergang am frühen Morgen
 mortal, *adj.*, sterblich; *subst.*, der Sterbliche, -n, -n
 mortification, the, die Demütigung
 mortify, to, fränken
 most, meist
 mother, the, die Mutter, *pl.* —
 mother tongue, the, die Mutter-
 sprache
 motion, the, die Bewegung, -en
 motionless, regungslos
 mount, to, bestiegen, *str. v. insep.*

mountain, the, das Gebirge, -s, —
 mouth, the, der Mund, -es; (of a
 river), die Mündung, *pl.* -en
 move, to, bewegen; to live and —,
 leben und wohnen
 move off, to, weggehen, *str. v. sep.*;
 sich wegwenden
 muddy, schmutzig
 multitude, the, die Menge, die
 Masse, *pl.* -n
 musical, musikalisch
 musician, the, der Musiker, -s, —
 must, müssen, *irreg. v.*
 mutter, to, murmeln
 muttering, the, das Gemurmel, -s
 mysterious, geheimnisvoll
 mystery, the, das Geheimnis, -isse
 -ffe; das Mysterium, -s, -en.

N

nail, the, der Nagel, -s, —
 name, to, nennen, *str. v.*
 namely, das heißt, nämlich
 narrow, eng, schmal
 nation, the, die Nation, *pl.* -en
 national, national
 native, the, der Eingeborene, -n, -n,
 native, *adj.*, einheimisch
 natural, natürlich
 naturally, natürlich
 nature, the, die Natur; das Wesen,
 -s
 naughty, böse, bössartig
 nautical, seemännisch
 naval force, the, die Seemacht, die
 Flotte
 navigation, the, die Schifffahrt, das
 Schiffswesen
 near, nahe; — to, nahe an; to be
 — by, herannahen, nahe sein
 nearly, beinahe
 neatness, the, die Nettigkeit

necessaries, notwendige Sachen
 necessarily, notwendigerweise
 necessary, nötig, notwendig
 need, to, brauchen, nötig sein, nötig
 haben
 needle, the, die Nadel, *pl.* -n
 needlework, the, die (weibliche)
 Handarbeit, -en; das Nähen
 needful, notwendig
 needlessly, unnötigerweise
 neglect, the, die Vernachlässigung,
 die Nichtbeachtung, die Geringschät-
 zung
 neglect, to, vernachlässigen
 neighbouring, benachbart
 neighbourhood, the, die Nachbar-
 schaft
 neither, keiner, -e, -es; keiner von
 beiden; weder der eine noch der
 andre
 neither . . . nor, weder . . . noch
 nest, the, das Nest, -es, -er
 Netherlands, the, die Niederlande
 network of railways, the, das
 Eisenbahnnetz, -es, -e
 neutral, neutral, unbestimmt, farblos
 nevertheless, jedoch, nichtsdesto-
 weniger
 new, neu
 news, the, die Neuigkeit, *pl.* -en
 nice, hübsch
 night, the, die Nacht, *pl.* —e
 nineteen, neunzehn
 nineteenth, the, der neunzehnte
 no, nein
 no, kein, -e, kein
 no longer, nicht mehr
 nobility, the, der Adel, -s; the —
 and gentry, der hohe und niedere
 Adel
 noble, the, der Edelmann, -s, -leute
 noble, *adj.*, edel

nobody, niemand, -s, -en, -en, or
 indecl. in *gen.* and *dat.*
 noise, the, der Lärm, -s, *no pl.*
 nonsense, the, der Unsinn, -s
 nook, the, der Winkel, -s, —
 nor, noch
 Norman, the, der Normanne, -n, -n
 north-east, der Nord-Ost
 Northern, nördlich, des Nordens
 Northern Germany, Norddeutsch-
 land
 nose, the, die Nase, *pl.* -n
 not, nicht; — a, kein; — at all,
 durchaus nicht
 note, the, die Anmerkung, *pl.* -en;
 die Note, *pl.* -n
 note, to, bemerken, beobachten, nicht
 vergessen, *str. v. insep.*
 nothing, nichts
 notice, the, die Notiz, *pl.* -en
 notice, to take, bemerken, Notiz
 nehmen, *str. v.*
 notion, the, die Vorstellung, *pl.* -en
 notwithstanding, trotz
 noun, the, das Hauptwort, -es, —er;
 das Substantiv, -s, -e
 novel, the, der Roman, -s, -e
 novelty, the, die Neuigkeit, Abwech-
 slung
 now, jetzt; now . . . now, bald . . .
 bald; now and then, dann und
 wann, zuweilen
 number, the, die Zahl, *pl.* -en, die
 Nummer, *pl.* -en
 numerous, zahlreich.

O

oaken, eichen
 obedient, gehorsam
 obedience, the, der Gehorsam, -s
 obey, to, gehorchen

object, the, der Gegenstand, -s, —e;
 das Ziel, -s, -e
 object, the principal, der Haupt-
 zweck
 obliged, verbunden
 obscure, dunkel
 observation, the, die Beobachtung,
pl. -en
 observe, to, bemerken
 observer, the, der Beobachter, -s, —
 obtain, to, erlangen, sich verschaffen,
 erhalten, *str. v. insep.*
 obvious, offenbar
 occasion, the, die Gelegenheit, *pl.*
 -en
 occasion, to, verursachen, *w. v.*;
 hervorbringen, *str. v. sep.*
 occasionally, zuweilen, gelegentlich
 occupant, the, der Bewohner, der
 Einlieger, -s, —
 occupation, the, die Beschäftigung,
pl. -en; das Geschäft, -s, -e; to
 follow an occupation, einem Ge-
 schäfte nachgehen
 occupy, to, beschäftigen, in An-
 spruch nehmen, *str. v.*; (a place),
 besetzen, einnehmen, *str. v. sep.*
 occur, to, sich zutragen, *str. v. sep.*;
 vorfallen, *str. v. sep.*; vorkommen,
str. v. sep.; stattfinden, *str. v.*;
 sich ereignen
 o'clock, Uhr
 Odyssee, die Odyssee
 of, von
 off, weg, entfernt
 offence, the, die Beleidigung, *pl.* -en,
 to give —, beleidigen
 offend, to, Anstoß geben, *str. v.*;
 beleidigen
 offender, the, der Missethäter, -s,
 —; der Angeklagte, -n, -n
 offer, to, anbieten, *str. v. sep.*

offer up, to, darbringen, *str. v. sep.*
 office, the, das Amt, -s, -er
 officer, the, der Offizier, -s, -e
 oil, the, das Öl, -s, -e
 old, alt
 old age, the, das Greifenalter, -s
 olfactory, the, das Geruchsorgan, -s, -e
 omission, the, die Unterlassung
 omit, to, auslassen, *str. v. sep.*
 on, an
 once, einmal, einst; at —, auf einmal, sogleich
 one, ein, eine, ein
 only, nur, nichts als; (of time), erst
 onward, vorwärts
 open, to, öffnen, sich öffnen
 opening, the, der Anfang, -s
 operation, the, die Einrichtung, *pl.* -en; die Wirkung, -en; die Wirksamkeit
 opinion, the, die Meinung, *pl.* -en
 oppose, to, widerlegen, *w. v. insep.*; opponieren, entgegensetzen
 opposite, entgegengesetzt; the — end, am andern Ende, gegenüber
 opulence, the, der Überfluß, -sses
 oracle, the, das Orakel, -s, —
 orange-coloured, orangefarben
 orator, the, der Redner, -s, —
 orchard, the, der Baumgarten, -s, -en
 order, the (command), der Befehl, -s, -e; (position, rank), die Klasse, *pl.* -n; der Stand, -es, -en; (methodical arrangement), die Ordnung, *pl.* -en
 order, to, bestellen
 orderly, ordentlich, regelrecht
 ordinary, gewöhnlich
 organ, the, das Organ, -s, -e
 organisation, the, die Organisation, die innere Einrichtung

oriental, orientalisches, morgenländisch
 original, ursprünglich
 origin, the, der Ursprung; of low —, von niedriger Herkunft
 other, ander, -e, -es
 otherwise, anders, nicht so
 ought, soll, *irreg. v.*
 our, unser, -e, unser
 ours, der, die, das, unsrige
 out, aus
 out of doors, draußen, außer dem Hause
 outrage, the, die Gewaltthatigkeit, -en
 outside, the, außen, die äußere Seite; (of a box), der Deckel, -s, —
 outside, *adv.*, außerhalb, draußen
 over, über
 over, to be, vorüber sein
 overrate, to, überschätzen, *insep.*
 overrun, to, überschwemmen, *w. v. insep.*
 overturn, to, umstürzen, *w. v. sep.*
 owe to, to, verbanken
 our, *adj.*, eigen
 own, to (confess), gestehen, *str. v. insep.*; eingestehen, *str. v. sep.*; (possess), besitzen, *str. v. insep.*
 ownership, the, der Landbesitz, Grundbesitz, -es, -e
 ox, the, der Ochse, der Dösch, -n, -en.

P

pace, the, der Schritt, -s, -e; (rate), die Schnelligkeit
 pack up, to, aufpacken
 padlock, the, das Vorleseschloß, -sses, -sser,
 pagan, heidnisch
 pain, the, der Verdruss, -sses
 pain of death, by, unter Todesstrafe, bei Strafe des Todes

pains, to take, sich Mühe geben, *str. v.*
 paint, to, malen
 painter, the, der Maler, -s, —
 palace, the, der Palast, -es, —e
 pale, blaß
 paling, the, der Zaun, -s, —e
 pancake, the, der Pfannkuchen, -s,
 —; der Eierkuchen
 pane, the, die Fensterscheibe, *pl. -n*
 paradox, the, die widersinnige Be-
 hauptung, *pl. -en*; das Paradoxon,
 -s, -a or -en
 parallel, gleich, parallel; without
 —, ohne gleichen
 paralytic stroke, the, der Schlag-
 anfall, -s, —e
 parish, the, das Kirchspiel, -s, -e
 Parisian, the, der Pariser, -s, —
 parley, the, die Besprechung, *pl. -en*
 parliament, the, das Parlament, -s,
 -e
 parliamentary, parlamentarisch
 parrot, the, der Papagei, -s, -en
 part, in —, zum Teil, teilweise
 part, to, scheiden, *str. v.*; sich
 trennen
 part company, to, sich von jemandem
 trennen
 part of speech, the, der Redeteil,
 -s, -e
 participation, the, der Anteil, -s, -e
 particular, the, die Einzelheit, *pl.*
 -en
 particular, besonder, gewiß
 particularly, besonders
 party, the, die Gesellschaft, *pl. -en*
 partly, teils, teilweise
 pass (away), to, dahingehen, *str. v.*
sep.
 pass away from, to, aus den
 Händen kommen, *str. v.*; vorbeig-
 gehen, *str. v. sep.*

pass by, to (go past), vorbeigehen,
str. v. sep.
 pass to (cross), passieren
 pass over, to, übergehen, *str. v.*
insep.
 pass, to (time), zubringen, *str. v.*
sep.
 passage (in a hook), the, die Stelle,
pl. -n
 passenger, the, der Passagier, -s, -e;
 der Reisende, -n, -n
 passion, the, die Leidenschaft, *pl. -en*
 pastor, the, der Pastor, -s, -en
 patent, the, das Patent, -s, -e; der
 Freibrief, -s, -e
 path, the, der Pfad, -s, -e
 pathological, rührend
 pathetically, in rührender Weise
 pathos, the, die Erhabenheit, etwas
 Ergreifendes
 patient, the, der Kranke, -n, -n; der
 Patient, -en, -en
 patron, the, der Beschützer, -s, —;
 der Patron, -s, -e
 patronage, the, die Gönnerschaft,
 die Beschützung
 patronising, herablassend
 pause, the, die Pause, *pl. -n*
 pause, to, anhalten, *str. v. sep.*;
 sich bestimmen, *str. v. insep.*
 pay, the, der Sold, -s
 pay to, bezahlen
 pay attention, to, Aufmerksamkeit
 widmen
 pay respect, to, Achtung sollen
 peach, the, die Pfirsiche (sometimes
 der Pfirsich), *pl. -n*
 peasant, the, der Bauer, -s or -n, -n
 peasantry, the, die Bauern (*pl.*);
 sons of the —, die Bauerjungen
 pascadillo, the, der Streich, -s, -e;
 die kleine Sünde, *pl. -n -n*

peck, to, picken; — about, herum-
picken

peculiar, besonder, eigentümlich; our
—, unser eigner

pedagogue, the, der Pädagoge, -n,
-n

pedantic, pedantisch

peep, to, sehen, *str. v.*, lugen

peer, the, der Herr von hohem Adel

pellet, the, das Kugelfchen, -s, —

penalty, the, die Strafe, *pl. -n*

pencil, the, der Bleistift, -s, -e

pencil-case, der englische Bleistift
-s, -e; der Bleistifthalter, Schiebe-
stift

penny, the, der Pfennig, -s, -e

pensively, nachdenklich

people, the, das Volk, -s, —er; die
Leute (*pl.*), man

perceptible, bemerkbar

perception, the, die Wahrnehmung

perfect, to, vervollkommen

perfectly, vollkommen, ganz; — un-
furnished, ohne alle Möbel

perhaps, vielleicht

peril, the, die Gefahr, *pl. -en*

period, the, die Periode, *pl. -n*; die
Zeit, *pl. -en*; die Dauer

permit, to, gestatten, erlauben

perpetual, ewig, immerwährend

perplexity, die Schwierigkeit, *pl. -en*

persecute, to, verfolgen

persecution, the, die Verfolgung,
pl. -en

persevere, fest halten (*str. v.*) an
etwas

person, die Person, *pl. -en*; persons,
Leute

personal, persönlich

perspiration, the, der Schweiß

persuade, to, überreden, *w. v. in-
sep.*

pertinacity, the, die Beharrlichkeit
pester, to, plagen

philanthropy, the, die Menschen-
liebe

philosopher, the, der Philosoph, -en,
-en

philosophical, philosophisch

phrase, the, die Phrase, *pl. -n*; die
Rede, *pl. -n*; die Redensart, *pl. -en*

physician, the, der Arzt, -es, —e

pick up, to, (catch), auffangen, *str.
v. sep.*

pick up, to, (gather), auflesen, *str.
v. sep.*

pick up, to, (lift), aufheben, *str. v.
sep.*, aufnehmen, *str. v. sep.*

pick up, to, (by chance), aufpassen

picture, the, das Bild, -es, -er; das
Gemälde, -s, —; — gallery, die

Bildergalerie, die Gemäldegalerie

picture, to, ausmalen

picturesque, malerisch

piece, the, das Stück, -es, -e

piety, the, die Frömmigkeit

pig, the, das Schwein, -s, -e

pike, the, die Pike, *pl. -n*

pill, the, die Pille, *pl. -n*

pin, the, die Nadel, *pl. -n*; der
Pflock, -s, —e; der Stift, -s, -e

pirate, the, der Seeräuber, -s, —;
der Pirat, -en, -en

pistol, the, die Pistole, *pl. -n*

pity, the, das Mitleiden, -s

pity, to, bemitleiden, *w. v. insep.*

place, the, der Ort, -es, —er; der
Platz, -es, —e; in the first

(second) —, erstens, zweitens

place, to, setzen

plaid, the, der Plaid, -s, -s; die
Reisebede, *pl. -n*

plain, the, die Ebene; the plains,
die Gegend, Umgegend, *pl. -en*

plain, *adj.*, einfach, gerade, deutlich,
klar

plan, the, der Plan, -s, -e

planet, the, der Planet, -en, -en

plant, the, die Pflanze, *pl.* -n

plate, the, der Teller, -s, —; die
Platte, *pl.* -n; the iron —, die
Eisenplatte

play, the (game), das Spiel, -s, -e;
(drama), das Schauspiel, -s, -e

play, to, spielen

plea, the, die Verteidigung, *pl.* -en

plead, vor Gericht reden, einen Prozeß
führen

pleasant, angenehm, freundlich; it is
—, es ist ein Vergnügen

please, *imp.*, bitte, befehlen Sie, seien
Sie so gut und

please, to, gefallen, *str. v. insep.*;
to be pleased with, Gefallen,
Freude, an etwas haben

pleased, erfreut

pleased with, to be, Gefallen an
etwas finden, *st. v.*

pleasure, das Vergnügen, -s, *pl.* Ver-
gnügungen; der Genuß, -ßes, -ße

pleasure grounds, the, die Anlagen

plenty, genug, die Menge, zur Genüge

plentiful, überflüssig, im Überfluß

plot, the (of ground), der Flecken,
-s, —; (of the play), der Knoten
des Schauspiels

plough, the, der Pflug, -es, -e

plough, to, pflügen

plunge, to, tauchen, sich stürzen

pocket, to, in die Tasche stecken

pocket, the, die Tasche, *pl.* -n

pocket book, the, das Taschenbuch,
-s, -er

poet, the, der Dichter, -s, —

poetaster, the, der Dichterling, -s,
-e

poetry, the, die Poesie, *pl.* -en; die
Dichtung, *pl.* -en

point, the, der Punkt, -es, -e

point of view, Einsicht

point, to, spitzen

point out, to, aufmerksam machen
auf; hinweisen auf, *str. v. sep.*;
angeben, *str. v. sep.*

point to, to, hinweisen auf, *str. v.*
sep.

poison, to, vergiften

poisonous, giftig

Poland, Polen

polish, to, putzen

polished, fein

politics, the, die Politik

political, politisch

pompous, großsprecherisch

pony, the, der Pony, -s, -s

pool, the, der Pfuß, -s, -e; der
Teich, -s, -e

poor, arm

pope, the, der Papst, -es, -e

popular, beliebt, populär

population, the, die Bevölkerung,
pl. -en

pore, to, starren, anstarren

pork, the, das Schweinefleisch, -s;
der Schweinebraten, -s

port, der Portwein, -s, -e

porter, the, der Lastträger, -s, —

possession, the, der Besitz, -es,
-ungen; das Besitztum, Eigentum,
-s, -er

possibility, the, die Möglichkeit

post, the (piece of timber), der
Pfahl, -s, -e

post, the (place, office, item), der
Posten, -s, —

post, the (letters), die Post

post-horse, the, das Postpferd, -es,
-e

posterity, the, die Nachwelt
 pound, the, das Pfund, -s, -e
 pour, to, gießen, *str. v.*; — out, ausgießen
 poverty, the, die Armut
 powder, to, pudern
 power, the, die Kraft, *pl.* —e; die Macht, *pl.* —e; die Gewalt, *pl.* -en
 powerful, mächtig
 practice, the, die Ausübung
 practice, to, carry into, praktisch ausüben, anwenden
 practise, to, ausüben
 Pragmatic Sanction, the, die pragmatische Sanction
 preacher, the, der Prediger, -s, —
 preach, to, predigen
 precedent, the, der Vorgang, -s, —e; das Beispiel, -s, -e; der Präcedenzfall, -s, —e
 precious, teuer, kostbar
 precisely, grade
 predecessor, the, der Vorgänger; -s, —
 predict, to, vorher sagen
 prediction, the, die Voraussagung, *pl.* -en
 prefer, vorziehen, *str. v. sep.*
 preferment, the, die Beförderung
 prejudice, the, das Vorurteil, -s, -e
 prelate, the, der Kirchenfürst, -en, -en; der Prälat, -en, -en
 preliminary, einleitend
 preparation, the, die Vorbereitung, *pl.* -en; (of war), die Rüstung, -en
 prepare, to, vorbereiten, zurecht machen, fertig machen; for preparing, zur Zubereitung
 presage, the, die Ahnung, *pl.* -en; die Vorhersagung, *pl.* -en
 prescribe, to, vorschreiben, *str. v. sep.*

prescription, the (physician's) das Rezept, -s, -e
 presence, the, die Anwesenheit, die Gegenwart
 present, gegenwärtig
 present day, the, der heutige Tag
 present, to, vorstellen, *sep. v.*
 presently; augenblicklich, sogleich, bald
 preserve, to, bewahren, aufbewahren, erhalten, *str. v. insep.*, behalten
 preserver, the, der Beschützer, -s, —; der Erhalter, -s, —
 presume, to, sich herausnehmen, *str. v. sep.*, so frei sein und
 presumption, the, die Unverschämtheit
 pretence, the, der Vorwand, -es, —e
 pretend, to, heucheln, vorgeben, *str. v. sep.*; behaupten
 pretension, the, der Anspruch, -s, —e
 pretty, *adj.*, hübsch, nett
 pretty, *adv.*, ziemlich
 prevail, to, vorherrschen
 prevail upon, to, bewegen, überreden
 prevent, to, verhindern, verhüten, vorbeugen
 previous, vorhergehend
 pride, the, der Stolz, -es
 prime, the, die Blüte
 primrose, the, die Primel, *pl.* -n
 prince, the, der Fürst, -en, -en; der Prinz, -en, -en
 princess, the, die Prinzessin, *pl.* -nen
 principal object, the, der Hauptzweck
 principal in the war, kriegsführende Hauptmacht

- principle, the, das Prinzip, -s, -ien;
 der Grundsatz, -es, -e
- private, privat; — opinion, die
 Privatmeinung
- privilege, the, das Vorrecht, -es, -e;
 das Privilegium, -s, -en
- probability, the, die Wahrscheinlich-
 keit, pl. -en
- probe, to, untersuchen; — a matter
 to the bottom, einer Sache auf
 den Grund gehen
- proceed, to, fortfahren, *str. v. sep.*;
 fortsetzen, *str. v. sep.*; fort-
 kommen, *str. v. sep.* beginnen, *str.*
v. insep.
- proceeding, the, die Verhandlung,
 pl. -en; das Verfahren, -s; die
 Maßnahme, pl. -n
- prodigal, the, der verlorne Sohn
- prodigal, *adj.*, verschwenderisch
- prodigious, ungeheuer
- produce, to, erzeugen, *v. v. insep.*;
 hervorbringen, *str. v. sep.*; zur
 Folge haben
- producing power, the, die Produkti-
 vität; die produzierende Kraft
- production, the, das Werk, -es, -e;
 die Hervorbringung
- productive, fruchtbar
- profession, the, das Gewerbe, -s,
 —; die Profession, pl. -en; der
 Beruf, -s, -e
- profit, the, der Gewinn, -s, -e
- profound, gründlich, tief
- profuse, freigebig
- profusely, reichlich
- progress, the, der Fortschritt, -s, -e
- prolong, to, verlängern
- promise, to, versprechen, *str. v.*
insep.
- promptly, schnell, rasch, ohne sich zu
 bedenken
- pronounce, to, aussprechen, *str. v.*
sep.
- pronounce upon, to, beurteilen
- pronunciation, the, die Aussprache
- propensity, the, die Neigung, pl.
 -en
- proper, angemessen, ratfam, recht,
 geeignet
- properly, gehörig, ordentlich, schicklich
- property, the, das Eigentum, -s,
 -er
- prophecy, to, vorher sagen, pro-
 phezeien
- proportion, in — to, im Verhältnis
 zu, je nachdem
- proposal, the, der Vorschlag, -s, -e;
 der Prospektus, des —, die —se
- propose, to, vorschlagen, *str. v. sep.*;
 (intend), vorhaben
- proposed, beabsichtigt
- prose, the, die Prosa
- prosecute, to (studies), fortsetzen,
sep.
- protect, to, schützen, beschützen
- protestation, the, die Versicherung,
 pl. -en
- proud, stolz
- prove, to, beweisen, *str. v. insep.*
- proverb, the, das Sprichwort, -es,
 -er
- provide, to, versehen, *str. v. insep.*;
 provided with, versehen mit
- provision, the, der Vorrat, -s, -e
- provisions, the, die Lebensmittel
 (pl.)
- provost, the, der Probst, -es, -e;
 provost's house, die Probstei
- Prussia, Preußen
- Prussian, preussisch
- public, the, das Publikum, -s
- public, *adj.*, öffentlich
- public men, Staatsmänner

publisher, the, der Verlagsbuchhändler, der Verleger, -s, —

publish, to, herausgeben, *str. v. sep.*

pull down, to, niederreißen, *str. v. sep.*

pull out, to, herausziehen, *str. v. sep.*

pulse, the, der Puls, -ses; der Pulsschlag, -s, —e

punish, to, bestrafen

pupil, the, der Schüler, -s, —

purchased, erhandelt, durch Kauf erlangt

pure, rein

purely, rein, einfach

Puritan, the, der Puritaner, -s, —

purple, purpurn, purpurfarben

pursue a track, to, einen Pfad betreten, *str. v. insep.*

put, to, setzen, stellen, legen

put in a claim, to, seine Ansprüche geltend machen

put on, aufsetzen, *w. v. sep.*; — on the hat, den Hut aufsetzen

put out, to (candle), das Licht auslöschen

put up, to, einstellen, *sep.*

puzzled, verblüht.

Q

quality, the, die Eigenschaft, *pl. -en*

quantity, the, die Masse, *pl. -n*; die Quantität, *pl. -en*; die Menge

quarter, the, das Viertel, -s, —; (locality), die Gegend, *pl. -en*

quarrel, to, hadern, sich zanken

queen, the, die Königin, *pl. -nen*

queer, seltsam

question, the, die Frage

question, to, fragen

quick, quickly, schnell

quicksilver, the, das Quecksilber, -s

quiet, ruhig, still

quiet, to, beruhigen

quite, ganz, durchaus.

R

rabbit, the, das Kaninchen, -s, —

race, the, der Stamm, -s, —e; die Rasse, *pl. -n*; das Geschlecht, -es, -er

radiant, freudestrahlend

radiate, to, strahlen, ausstrahlen, *w. v. sep.*

railway, the, die Eisenbahn, *pl. -en*

ramble, to, umherschweifen, herumwandern

range, the, die Reihe, *pl. -n*

rank, the, der Rang, -es; men of —, Männer von Stande

rank with, to, gleichstellen

rape, the (bot.), der Raps, -ses

rapid, schnell

rare, selten

rather, eher, lieber, mehr, vielmehr, ziemlich, etwas

raw, roh; (of troops), frisch ausgehoben

ray, the, der Strahl, -s, -en; — of the sun, der Sonnenstrahl

reach, to, reichen, erreichen

reach, the, der Bereich, -s

reach, to come within, in Bereich kommen

reader, the, der Leser, -s, —

readily, schnell, leicht, bereitwillig

reading, the, die Lektüre

ready, bereit, fertig

ready made, fertig

reality, the, die Wirklichkeit, *pl. -en*

really, wirklich

reap, to, ernten

reason, the, die Vernunft, no *pl.*; (cause), der Grund, -es, —e

- receive, to, erhalten, *str. v. insep.* ;
aufnehmen, *str. v. sep.* ; em-
pfangen, *str. v. insep.*
- receive company, to, ein (glänzen-
des, großes) Haus machen
- receipt, the, der Empfang, -s
- recently, neulich
- recognise, to, erkennen, wieder
erkennen, *str. v. insep.*
- recollect, to, sich (an eine Sache)
erinnern
- recollection, the, das Nachdenken, -s
- recommence, to, fortfahren, *str.*
v. sep. ; wieder anfangen, *str. v.*
sep.
- reconcile, to, ausöhnen, sich aus-
öhnen, *w. v. sep.*
- reconstruct, to, neu aufbauen, wieder
aufbauen
- record, the, der Bericht, -s, -e
- record, to, aufzeichnen, *w. v. sep.*
- recover, to, sich erholen
- red, rot
- reduce, to, herunterbringen, *str. v.*
sep. ; reduzieren
- refer to, to, (ascribe), zuschreiben,
str. v. sep.
- reflect, to, sich abspiegeln, sich wieder-
spiegeln
- reflection, the, der Gedanke, -ns, -n
- refrain, to, sich (einer Sache) enthalten,
str. v. insep.
- refreshing, erfrischend
- refuge, the, die Zuflucht, *pl.* Zu-
fluchtsstätten
- refusal, the, die abschlägliche Ant-
wort, *pl. -en*
- regain, to, wieder erreichen
- regard, to, ansehen, *str. v. sep.* ;
betrachten
- regard, the, die Rücksicht; with
regard to, mit Rücksicht auf
- regiment, the, das Regiment, -s,
-er
- regret, to, bedauern
- regret, the, das Bedauern, -s
- reign, the, die Regierung, *pl. -en*
- reign, to, regieren
- reinforcement, the, die Verstärkung,
pl. -en ; die Hilfstruppe, *pl. -n*
- relate, to, erzählen, berichten
- relation, the, der Verwandte, -n, -n
- relative to, to be, abhängen von
- release, to, freilassen, *str. v. sep.* ;
freisetzen, *str. v. sep.*
- relic, the, die Reliquie, *pl. -n*
- relieve, to, abhelfen, *str. v. sep.* (with
dat.) ; lindern (with *acc.*) ; heben
str. v.
- religion, die Religion, *pl. -en*
- relinquish, to, aufgeben, *str. v. sep.*
- rely upon some one, to, sich auf
jemanden verlassen, *str. v.*
- remain, to, bleiben, *str. v.*
- remark, the, die Bemerkung, -en
- remarkable, merkwürdig
- remember, to, sich erinnern ; —
faithfully, treu im Gedächtnis
bewahren
- remembrance, the, die Erinnerung,
pl. -en ; das Andenken, -s
- remind, to, erinnern (jemanden an)
- remote, entfernt
- remove, to, entfernen, wegnehmen,
str. v. sep.
- rent, the, die Pacht, *pl. -en*
- repair, to, (go), sich begeben, *str. v.*
insep. ; (mend), gut machen
- repeal, the, die Abschaffung
- repeat, to, wiederholen, *w. v. insep.*
- reply, the, die Antwort, *pl. -en*
- reply, to, antworten
- report, the, der Bericht, -es, -e ; der
Ruf ; from —, dem Berichte nach

representative, the, der Vertreter, -s, —, die Vertreterin, *pl.* -nen;
 der Repräsentant, die Repräsentantin
 reptile, der Wurm, -s, —er
 repugnant, zuwider
 reputation, the, der Ruhm, -s
 require, to, verlangen
 research, the, die Untersuchung, *pl.* -en; die Nachforschung, -en
 resemble, to, gleichen, *str. v.*
 residence, the, das Haus, -ses, —fer; die Wohnung, *pl.* -en; das Schloß, -ßes, —ßer
 resign, to, sich ergeben, *str. v. insep.*
 resignation, the, die Entsagung
 resistance, the, der Widerstand; to make —, Widerstand leisten
 resolute, entschlossen
 resolution, the, der Entschluß, -ßes, —ße
 respect, the, die Achtung, die Hochachtung; in this —, in dieser Hinsicht
 respectable, achtbar, respektabel
 rest, the (remainder), der Rest, -es, -e; (repose), die Ruhe; a night's rest, eine Nachtruhe
 rest, to, ruhen
 Restoration, the, die Restauration
 restore, to, zurückbringen, *str. v. sep.*
 result, the, das Ergebnis, -ßes, -ße; die Folge, *pl.* -n; das Resultat, *pl.* -e
 retire, to, zurückziehen, sich zurückziehen
 retirement, the, die Zurückgezogenheit, die Einsamkeit
 retract, to, zurückziehen, *str. v. sep.*
 retrieve, to, wieder herstellen, gut machen
 return, the, die Rückkehr

return, to, zurückkehren, *w. v. sep.*
 reveal, to, offenbaren
 revenue, the, das Einkommen, die Einkünfte (*pl.*)
 revenge, the, die Rache; to have —, sich rächen
 revenge, to, rächen
 reverse, to, umkehren, *w. v. sep.*
 revive, to, wieder beleben, erfrischen
 revoke, to, widerrufen, *str. v. insep.*
 revolution, the, die Revolution, *pl.* -en
 reward, the, die Belohnung, *pl.* -en
 reward, to, belohnen
 rich, reich
 riches, the, der Reichtum, -s, —er
 ride, to, reiten, *str. v. sep.*; — in a coach, fahren, *str. v.*
 ridicule, the, die Satire, *pl.* -n
 right, recht; on the —, rechts, zur rechten
 rigorous, streng
 ring, the, der Ring, -s, -e
 rise, to, aufgehen, *str. v. sep.*; aufstehen, *str. v. sep.*; sich erheben, *str. v. insep.*; steigen, *str. v.*
 rise in vapour, to, als Dampf (Dünste) aufsteigen, *str. v. sep.*
 risk, the, die Gefahr, das Risiko; at the —, mit Gefahr
 risk, to, die Gefahr laufen, *str. v.*
 rival, the, der Nebenbuhler, -s, —
 river, the, der Fluß, -ßes, —ße
 river-side, by the, den Fluß entlang
 rivet, to, zusammenschrauben, *str.* or *w. v. sep.*
 road, the, der Weg, -s, -e; die Straße, *pl.* -en; die Route
 roar, to, brüllen
 rob, to, rauben, berauben
 robust, kerngesund

rock, the, der Fels, der Felsen, -s,

—

rod, the, die Rute, *pl.* -n

Roman, the, der Römer, -s, —

Roman, *adj.*, römisch

romantic, romantisch

roof, the, das Dach, -es, -er; from
under his —, aus seinem Haus-
halte

room, the, (space), der Platz, -es,
-e; (apartment), das Zimmer,
-s, —

root, the, die Wurzel, *pl.* -n

roquelaure, the, die Roquelaure, (a
cloak so called after the Duc de
R.); der Mantel, -s, —

rose, the, die Rose, *pl.* -n

rough, rauh, stürmisch

round, rund; — about, ringsum

rouse, to, aufrütteln

royal, königlich

ruin, the, die Ruine, *pl.* -n

ruin, to, ruinieren, zu Grunde richten

ruler, the, der Regent, -en, -en

rumour, the, das Gerücht, -s, -e

rumour, to, das Gerücht verbreiten;
it is rumoured, es geht das Ge-
rücht

run, to, rennen, *str. v.*, laufen,
str. v.

run off, to, weglaufen, *str. v. sep.*

run, the common —, die gemeine
Sorte

rural, ländlich; — life, das Land-
leben, -s

rush, to, stürzen, sich stürzen, fahren,
str. v.; steigen, *str. v.*; schießen,
str. v.

Russia, Rußland

rusty, rostig, verrostet.

S

sacred, heilig

sacrifice, das Opfer, -s, —

sacrifice, to, opfern

sad, traurig, wehmütig

safely, sicher

safety, the, die Sicherheit

sagacious, klug

sagacity, the, der Scharfblick, -s

sage, the, der Weltweise, -n, -n

sail, the, das Segel, -s, —

sailor, the, der Seemann, -s, -leute

salary, the, das Gehalt, -s, -er

sale, the, der Verkauf, -s, -e

salt, the, das Salz, -es, -e; *adj.*,
salzig

salutary, heilsam; — sign, das
Zeichen des Heils

same, the, derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe

sanctify, to, heiligen

sanction, the, die Genehmigung

sand, the, der Sand, -es

sardonic, sardonisch

satire, the, die Satire, *pl.* -n

satisfactory, befriedigend; anything

but —, höchst unbefriedigend

satisfied, zufrieden, zufrieden gestellt

savage, wild

save, to, retten

sawdust, the, die Sägespäne (*pl.*)

Saxon, the, der Sachse, -n, -n

Saxony, Sachsen

scaffold, the, das Schafott, -s, -e

scale, the, der Maßstab, -s, -e; on
the most expensive —, aufs

teuerste

scarlet, scharlach

scatter, to, streuen, zerstreuen, ver-
breiten

scene, the, die Scene, *pl.* -n; das
Bild, -es, -er

sceptre, the, das Scepter, -s, —

scheme, the, der Plan, -s, -e
 scholar, the (learner), der Schüler,
 -s, —; (learned man), der Ge-
 lehrte, -n, -n
 scold, to, schelten, *str. v.*
 school, the, die Schule, *pl. -n*
 school-house, the, das Schulhaus,
 -ses, -fer
 school, to, unterrichten, *insep.*; *unterweisen, str. v. insep.*
 score, the, zwanzig; to count, to
 number by the —, nach der
 Mandel, nach dem Duzend zählen
 score, on the, auf Grund
 score, to, unterstreichen, *str. v. insep.*
 Scottish, schottisch
 scour, to, durchstreichen, *str. v.*
insep.; durchschweifen, *w. v. insep.*
 scream, schreien, *str. v.*; freisprechen,
str. or w.
 Scriptures, the, die Schrift, die
 Heilige Schrift
 scruple, the, das Bedenken; to have
 scruples, Bedenken, Aufwand tra-
 gen, *str. v.*; die Bedenklichkeit
 sea, the, die See, *pl. -n*; das Meer,
 -s, -e
 sea-chest, the, die Seetiste, *pl. -n*
 sea-coast, the, die Seeküste, *pl. -n*
 sea-shore, the, das Meeresufer, -s
 season, the, die Jahreszeit, *pl. -en*;
 die Zeit
 secret, the, das Geheimnis, -fies,
 -ffe
 secretary, the, der Sekretär, -s, -e
 secure, *adj.*, sicher
 secure, to, schließen, *str. v.*; ver-
 schließen, *insep.*; verwahren, *w. v.*
insep.
 security, the, die Sicherheit; per-
 sonal —, Sicherheit der Person,
 persönliche Sicherheit

see, to, sehen, *str. v.*
 seed, the, die Saat, *pl. -en*
 seek, to, suchen
 seem, to, scheinen, *str. v.*
 seemingly, dem Anschein nach, an-
 scheinend
 select, to, wählen, aussuchen
 selection, the, die Wahl, die Aus-
 wahl, *pl. -en*
 self, sich
 self-instruction, the, die Selbst-
 belehrung, das Privatstudium, -s
 selfish, selbstsüchtig, egoistisch, eigen-
 nützig
 selfishness, the, die Selbstsucht
 self-willed, eigenwillig
 sell, to, verkaufen
 send, to, schicken, *w. v.*; senden,
str. v.
 send, for, to, nach jemandem schicken
 send back, to, zurückversetzen
 sensation, the, die Empfindung, *pl.*
 -en
 sense, the, der Sinn, -s, -e
 sensible, fühlbar, bemerkbar
 sensitive, empfindlich, — to, gegen
 sentence, the, der Satz, -es, -e
 separation, the, die Trennung, *pl.*
 -en
 Septuagint, the, die Septuaginta
 sequester, to, mit Beschlag belegen
 sequestered, entlegen
 serious, seriously, ernst, ernstlich
 sermon, the, die Predigt, *pl. -en*
 servant, the, der Diensthote, -n, -n;
 der Diener, -s, —; die Magd, *pl.*
 -e
 servant maid, the, die Magd, *pl.*
 -e
 serve, to, dienen
 service, the, der Dienst, -es, -e; to
 be of —, nützen, von Nutzen sein

set aside, to, für ungültig erklären
 set forth, to, auseinander setzen
 settle, to (in a place), sich nieder-
 lassen, *str. v. sep.*, sich ansiedeln;
 (a bill, etc.), abmachen, festsetzen
 seventeen, siebzehn
 seventeenth, the, der siebzehnte
 sever, to, trennen, abschneiden, *str.*
v. sep.
 sex, the, das Geschlecht, -es, -er
 shade, the, der Schatten, -s, —
 shake, to, schütteln
 shame, the, die Scham, no *pl.*, die
 Schande
 shape, the, die Gestalt, *pl. -en*
 share, the, der Anteil, -s, -e
 shatter, to, erschüttern, zerrütten
 shave, to, rasieren
 sheep, the, das Schaf, -s, -e
 sheet, the, der Bogen, -s, —
 sheet iron, the, das Blech, -s, -e;
 das Eisenblech
 shelf, the, das Gestell, -s, -e; der
 Schrank, -s, —
 shelter, the, das Obdach, -s, no *pl.*
 shelter, to, schützen
 shepherd's purse, the, die Hirtent-
 tasche
 sheriff, the, der Sheriff, -s
 shield, the, der Schild, -es, -e
 shingle, the, (straw), die Schindeln
 (*pl.*); (stone), das Geröll, -s
 ship, the, das Schiff, -es, -e
 shipping, the, das Schiffswesen, -s;
 die Schiffe
 shipwreck, the, der Schiffbruch, -s,
 —
 shock, the, der Schlag, -s, —
 hope, eine überraschende Hoffnung
 shoe, the, der Schuh, -s, -e
 shoot, to, schießen, *str. v.*, erschießen,
str. v. insep., tot schießen

shop, der Laden, -s, —
 shopkeeper, the, der Krämer, -s,
 —; der Kaufmann, -s, -leute
 shopman, the, der Ladenbiener, -s, —
 shore, the, das Ufer, -s, —
 short, kurz
 shortly, kurz, kurze Zeit
 shoulder, the, die Schulter, *pl. -n*
 shove, to, schieben, *str. v.*
 show, the, die Schau, *pl. -en*; (of
 animals), die Menagerie, *pl. -n*,
 die Tierchau
 show, to, zeigen, *v. v.*
 shrewd, scharfsinnig
 shrink, to, schrumpfen, zusammen-
 schrumpfen, schwinden, *str. v.*
 shrub, the, der Strauch, -es, —
 shut, to, zumachen, *sep. v.*
 side, on his —, seinerseits, on her
 —, ihrerseits
 siege, die Belagerung, *pl. -en*; state
 of, der Belagerungszustand
 sigh, the, der Seufzer, -s, —
 sigh, to, seufzen
 sight, the, der Anblick, -s, -e; in —,
 within —, in Sicht
 sign, the, das Zeichen, -s, —
 signally, augenscheinlich, sichtbar
 silence, the, das Schweigen; in —,
 schweigend
 silence, to, zum Schweigen bringen,
str. v.
 silent, still, schweigend
 silk, the, die Seide; *adj.*, silken,
 seiden
 silly, dumm
 silver, das Silber; — spoon, der
 silberne Löffel
 similar, ähnlich
 simile, the, das Gleichnis, -fß, -ffe
 simple, simply, einfach
 since (*prep.*), seit, (*adv.*), seitdem

sincere, aufrichtig
 single (only), einzig; (one by one), einzeln
 single men, unverheiratete Leute
 singularly, ungemein
 sink, to, sinken, *str. v.*
 Sir, mein Herr
 site, the, die Lage, *pl. -n*
 situation, the, die Stellung, Anstellung, *pl. -en*; die Lage, *pl. -n*
 six, sechs; — o'clock, sechs Uhr
 sixth, the, der sechste
 sixteen, sechzehn
 sixteenth, the, der sechzehnte
 size, the, die Größe, *pl. -n*
 skill, the, die Geschicklichkeit
 skin, the, die Haut, *pl. -e*
 sky, the, der Himmel, -s, —
 sleep-inducing, einschläfernd
 slender, schlank, (of figure); klein, gering, unbedeutend (of quantity)
 slight, the, die Kränkung, *pl. -en*
 slight, *adj.*, gering
 slope, to, sich senken
 slow, slowly, langsam
 slumber, the, der Schummer, -s
 small, klein, gering
 small-clothes, die Hosen
 smallpox, the, die Pocken, (*pl.*)
 smart, to make, Schmerz verursachen; to make the eyes — sharply, beißenden Augenschmerz verursachen
 smear, to, schmieren, beschmieren, auswischen
 smell of, to, nach etwas riechen, *str. v.*
 smile, to, lächeln
 smoke, the, der Rauch
 smoke, to, rauchen
 smooth, glatt, ruhig
 smoothly, gemächlich
 snake, die Schlange, *pl. -n*

snatch (from), to, wegreißen, aus der Hand reißen, *str. v.*
 sneak, to, schleichen, *str. v.*; — in, hineinschleichen
 snow, the, der Schnee
 snug, behaglich, gemütlich
 sob, the, der Seufzer, -s, —
 sob, to, schluchzen, seufzen
 sociable, gesellig
 social, gesellschaftlich, sozial
 society, the, die Gesellschaft, *pl. -en*
 sofa, the, das Sopha, -s, -s
 soften, to, besänftigen
 soil, the, der Boden, -s; das Erdreich, -s
 soldier, the, der Soldat, -en, -en
 solicit, to, nachsuchen
 solicitor, the, der Advokat, -en, -en
 solitary, einsam
 solve, to, lösen
 some, einige, manche
 some day, eines Tages
 some one, jemand
 sometimes, manchmal, mitunter, zuweilen
 son, the, der Sohn, -s, -e
 songster, the, der Sänger, -s, —
 soon, bald
 sooner, schneller, eher
 soothe, to, lindern
 Sophy, Sophie, -ens, *dat. -e*, or -en
 sorrow, the, der Kummer, -s, no *pl.*; die Not, der Unmut
 sorry, betrübt, traurig; I am —, es thut mir leid, ich bereue es
 sort, the, die Art, *pl. -en*; die Sorte, *pl. -n*
 soul, the, die Seele, *pl. -n*; no —, niemand, kein Mensch
 source, the, die Quelle, *pl. -n*
 sovereign, the, der Souverän, -s, -e; der Herrscher, -s, —

sovereign, the, a coin, (about)
 zwanzig Mark (German)
 sow, to, säen
 Spain, Spanien
 Spaniard, the, der Spanier, -s, —
 spare, to, schonen
 speak, to, sprechen, *str. v.* reden
 speaker, the, der Redner, -s, —
 specially, besonders
 specimen, the, die Probe, *pl. -n*
 speck, the, der Flecken, -s, —
 speckled, gefleckt
 speculation, the, die Spekulation,
pl. -en
 speechless, sprachlos
 speed, the, die Schnelligkeit; with
 —, schnell, schnellig
 speedy, schnell
 spend, to (money), ausgeben, *str. v. sep.*; (time), zubringen, *str. v. sep.*
 sphere, the, die Sphäre, *pl. -n*
 spice, the, die Spezerei, *pl. -en*
 spirit, the, der Geist, der Mut, der Sinn, das Wesen; (a liquid), der Spiritus
 spirits, the (a liquid), der Spiritus, des —; spirituose Getränke
 spiritual, geistlich
 spite, in — of, trotz
 splendid, glänzend, prächtig, ausgezeichnet
 splendour, the, der Glanz, -es
 splutter, to, spritzen
 spoil, spoils, the, die Beute, no *pl.*
 spoon, der Löffel, -s, —
 sport, to, sich tummeln
 spot, upon the, auf der Stelle
 spring, the, die Quelle, *pl. -n*; spring-water, Quellwasser
 spring up, to, sich erheben, *str. v. insep.*; aufspringen, *str. v. sep.*

squire, the, der Gutsherr, -n, -en
 stable-man, the, der Stallknecht, -es, -e
 stage, the, die Bühne, die Weltbühne, *pl. -n*
 stage-coach, the, der Postwagen, -s, —
 stairs, the, die Treppe, *pl. -n*; die Stufe, *pl. -n*
 stamp, to, stempeeln, prägen
 standard, the, die Standarte, *pl. -n*; die Fahne, *pl. -n*
 star, the, der Stern, -s, -e; the morning —, der Morgenstern
 stare, to, starren
 start, to, aufbrechen, *str. v. sep.*; abfahren, *str. v. sep.*; abgehen, *str. v. sep.*
 start up, to, aufspringen, *str. v. sep.*
 starve, to, verhungern; to — oneself, (freiwillig) hungern, verhungern
 state, the (commonwealth), der Staat, -s, -en; (condition), der Stand, der Zustand, -s, -e; state of siege, der Belagerungsstand
 state, to, erklären
 statesman, the, der Staatsmann, -s, -er
 station, the, (place), der Ort, -es, -er; die Stelle, *pl. -n*; (railway), die Station, der Bahnhof; (rank in life), der Stand, -es, -e; der Rang, -s
 statue, the, das Standbild, -s, -er
 stay, to, bleiben, *str. v.*; sich aufhalten, *str. v. sep.*
 steadiness, the, die Unererschütterlichkeit
 steal, to, stehlen, *str. v.*
 steam, the, der Dampf, -es, -e

steam, to, dampfen, mit dem Dampf-
schiffe fahren, *str. v.*
steam-engine, the, die Dampfma-
schine, die Lokomotive, *pl. -e*
steamer, the, das Dampfschiff, -es,
-e
steel-purse, the, die Stahlbörse, *pl.*
-n
steep, to, eintauchen, tränken
step, the, der Tritt, -s, -e; der
Schritt, -s, -e
step, to, treten, *str. v.*
stick, the, der Stod, -es, "-e
stick in, to, einstecken
stick up, to, anheften, *w. v. sep.*
stile, the, der Baumtritt, -s, -e
still, noch
stilt of a plough, the, die Pflug-
sterze, *pl. -n*
stil-yard, the, der Stahlfhof, -s
sting, to, stechen, *str. v.*
stir, to, sich rühren
stir out, to, ausgehen, *str. v. sep.* ;
I was not permitted to stir out,
ich durfte nicht aus dem Hause
stitch, to, zusammen nähen
stock, the, der Vorrat, -s, "-e; (of
a farmer), der Viehstand, -s
stockbroker, the, der Makler, -s,
—; der Börsenagent, -en, -en
stocking, the, der Strumpf, -es,
"-e
stomach, the, der Magen, -s, —
(rare)
stone, the, der Stein, -s, -e
stool, the, der Sessel, -s, —; der
Stuhl, -s, "-e
stoop down, to, sich bücken, sich
niederbücken, beugen
stop, to, aufhalten, *str. v. sep.* ;
stille stehen, *str. v.* ; (of coaches),
anspannen; (cease), aufhören

store, the, der Vorrat, -s, "-e
store, to, versehen, aufspeichern;
stored with, reich an
story, die Geschichte, *pl. -n*
straggling, struppig
straight, grade, gerades Begeß
strait-waistcoat, the, die Zwangs-
jacke, *pl. -n*,
strange, fremd, seltsam
street, die Straße, *pl. -n*
strength, the, die Kraft, *pl. "-e*
stretch, to, strecken, ausstrecken
strictness, the, die Strenge
stricken, gebeugt, geschlagen
strike, to, schlagen, *str. v.* ; (the
mind), auffassen, *str. v. sep.* ; it
strikes me, es fällt mir auf
strikingly, schlagend, auffallend
stroll, to, schlendern
struggle, to, sich anstrengen; — on,
vorwärts streben
study, the, das Studium, -s, -en;
(room), die Studierstube
study, to, studieren
stuffy, schlecht gelüftet
style, the, der Stil, -s, -e
styled, to be, heißen, *str. v.*
subdue, to, unterjochen, *insep.*
subdued tone, in a, in einem weichen,
sanften Tone
subject, the, der Unterthan, -s, -en
submission, the, die Unterwerfung
subscribe, to, subscribieren, sich
abonnieren
subsist, to, leben, existieren
subsistence, the, der Unterhalt, -s
substance, the, der Stoff, -s, -e; der
Bestandteil, -s, -e; die Substanz,
pl. -en; der wesentliche Inhalt
substantive, the, das Substantiv, -s
-e; das Hauptwort, -s, "-er
substitute, the, der Ersatz, -es

subtle, gewandt
 suburban, in der Vorstadt, — tene-
 ments, Vorstadthäuser
 success to you, gut Heil!
 succession, the, die Reihe, *pl. -n*;
 die Reihenfolge, *pl. -n*
 successive, aufeinanderfolgend
 such, solch; — a, solch ein, ein
 solcher; — or — a, dieser oder
 jener
 sudden, suddenly, of a —, plötzlich
 suffer, to, dulden; leiden, *str. v.*
 suffering, the, das Leiden, -s
 sufficient, sufficiently, genügend,
 hinreichend
 suffrage, the, die Stimme, das
 Stimmrecht
 suit, the, der Anzug, -s, -e
 sullen, mürrisch, finster
 sum, the, die Summe, *pl. -n*
 summit, the, die Spitze, -n
 summon, to, auffordern, (in law)
 vorladen
 sun, the, die Sonne
 Sunday, der Sonntag
 sundry, verschiedene (*pl.*)
 sunlight, the, der Sonnenglanz, -es;
 das Sonnenlicht
 sunny, sonnig
 sunset, the, der Sonnenuntergang,
 -s, -e
 sup, to, zu Abend essen, Abendbrot
 essen, *str. v.*
 superabundance, the, der Überfluß,
 -fles
 superfluous, überflüssig
 superior, vortrefflicher, höher, besser
 superior officer, the, der Vorgesetzte,
 -n, -n
 superstition, the, der Aberglaube,
 -ens, no *pl.*
 supper, das Abendbrot, -s, -e

supply, to, versehen (mit), *str. v.*
insep.
 support, the, die Stütze, -n; die
 Hilfe; der Beistand, -s
 support, to, tragen, *str. v.*, unter-
 halten, *str. v. insep.*; unterstützen
 suppose, to, voraussetzen, annehmen,
str. v. sep.; sich denken, *str. v.*;
 I — (expletive), wohl, doch wohl
 supreme, oberst, höchst, erst
 surely, wahrlich
 surface, the, die Oberfläche, *pl. -n*
 surly, verbrießlich
 surpass, to, übertreffen, *str. v. insep.*;
 überschreiten, *str. v. insep.*
 surpassingly, unübertrefflich
 surprise, the, die Überraschung, das
 Erstaunen, die Vermunderung; with
 —, erstaunt
 surprise, to, überraschen, *w. v.*
insep.; to be surprised, sich
 wundern
 surround, to, umgeben, *str. v. insep.*
 survive, to, überleben, *w. v. insep.*
 swallow, to, verschlucken, *w. v.*;
 verschlingen, *str. v. insep.*
 swear, to, schwören, *str. v.*; (curse)
 fluchen
 swim, to, schwimmen, *str. v.*
 sword, the, das Schwert, -es, -er;
 der Degen, -s, —
 symbol, the, das Symbol, -s, -e;
 das Wahrzeichen, -s, —
 sympathy, the, die Sympathie
 symptom, the, das Symptom, -s, -e
 system, the, das System, -s, -e.

T

table, the, der Tisch, -s, -e
 table-cloth, the, das Tischtuch, -s,
 -er

- tablet, the, das Täfelchen, das
 Schreibtäfelchen, -s, —
 tackle, the, das Gerät, -s; fishing
 —, das Fischgerät
 tail, the, der Schwanz, -es, —e
 take, to, nehmen, *str. v.*, tragen,
str. v.
 take a house, to, ein Haus mieten
 take a look at, to, sich nach etwas
 umsehen, *str. v. sep.*
 take part, to, teilnehmen, *str. v.*
sep.
 take place, to, stattfinden, *str. v.*
 take to, to, sich begeben, *str. v.*
insep.
 tale, the, die Erzählung, *pl. -en*
 talent, the, das Talent, -es, -e
 talk, the, die Rede, *pl. -n*; das
 Gespräch, -s, -e
 talk, to, sprechen, *str. v.*
 talk into, to, überreden
 tame, to, zähmen
 tart, the, der Kuchen, -s, —
 tart-woman, the, die Kuchenfrau,
 die Köchin
 task, the, die Aufgabe, *pl. -n*
 taste, the, der Geschmack, -s, no *pl.* ;
 — for, an; die Neigung, *pl. -en*
 tavern, the, das Wirtshaus, -fes
 —fer
 taxation, the, die Besteuerung, die
 Steuern (*pl.*)
 tea, the, der Thee, -s
 tea-time, the, die Theezeit
 teach, to, lehren, belehren, unter-
 richten
 teacher, the, der Lehrer, -s, —; die
 Lehrerin, *pl. -en*
 teaching, the, der Unterricht, -s
 tear, the, die Thräne, *pl. -n*
 tear, to, zerreißen, *str. v.*
 tedious, langweilig
- tell, to, erzählen
 temperance, the, die Mäßigkeit
 temperature, the, der Wärmegrad,
 -s, -e; die Temperatur
 temporal, weltlich
 temporary, einstweilig
 tempt, to, versuchen
 ten, zehn; — times, zehnmal
 tenant, the, der Pächter, -s, —
 tenantry, the, die Pächter (*pl.*)
 tench, the, die Schleie, *pl. -n*;
 sometimes der Schleiß
 tend, to, pflegen, *w. v.*
 tender-hearted, weichherzig
 term, the (condition), die Bedingung
 —en
 term, to, nennen, *str. v.* ; heißen,
str. v. ; as it was termed, wie es
 hieß
 terrible, schrecklich, furchtbar
 terrific, entsetzlich
 terrify, to, erschrecken, *w. v. insep.*
 territory, the, das Gebiet, -s, -e
 terror, the, der Schrecken, -s, —
 testament, the, das Testament, -s,
 —e
 testify, to, ausdrücken
 than, als
 that, *dem. pron.*, der, die das; jener,
 —e, —es; dieser, —e, —es; *rel. pr.*,
 welcher, —e, —es
 that is, das heißt
 that, *conj.*, daß
 the, der, die, das
 theatre, the, das Schauspielhaus,
 —fes, —fer; das Theater, -s, —;
 der Schauplatz, —es, —e
 their, ihr, ihre, ihr
 theme, the, der Gegenstand, -s, —e
 themselves, sich
 theory, the, die Theorie, *pl. -n*
 die Lehre, *pl. -n*

there, da, dort
 thereby, dadurch
 thick, dick
 thin, dünn
 things, die Bagage, das Gepäck, die Sachen (*pl.*)
 think, to, denken, *str. v.*; (believe), glauben, *w. v.*; (judge), dafür halten, *str. v.*
 think right, to, für recht, angemessen, halten
 thinker, the, der Denker, -s, —
 third, the, der dritte
 thirteen, dreizehn
 thirty, dreißig
 this very . . ., dieser (-e, -es) selbige
 thong, the, der Riemen, -s, —
 thoroughfare, the, die Hochstraße, *pl. -n*
 thoroughly, gründlich, durch und durch
 those, diejenigen, welche
 though, obgleich
 thousand, tausend
 thread, the, der Faden, -s, -en; a piece of —, ein Ende Bindfaden
 threaten, drohen, bedrohen
 three, drei
 three-cornered, dreieckig
 threescore and twenty, achtzig
 thrive, to, gedeihen, *str. v.*
 throne, the, der Thron, -s, -e
 throng, to, sich drängen
 through, durch
 throughout, ganz durch, ganz hindurch; — the country, das ganze Land hindurch
 throw, to, werfen, *str. v.*
 thrust back, to, zurückversetzen
 thunder, the, der Donner, -s, —
 thus, so, auf diese Weise
 till . . . within, bis . . . nach

time, the, die Zeit, *pl. -en*; with —, mit der Zeit; for some —, geraume Zeit, eine Zeitlang
 time, mal; ten times, zehnmal; the first —, das erste Mal
 timidly, zaghaft, furchtsam
 tin-box, the, die Blechbüchse, *pl. -n*
 tin-canister, the, die Blechbüchse, *pl. -n*
 tinned, verzinkt
 tired, müde
 tiresome, langweilig
 tiresomeness, the, die Langweiligkeit
 to (to a person), zu; (to a place), nach; (feelings towards), gegen; (as far as), bis; (in order to), um . . . zu
 toast, the, der Trinkspruch, -s, -e
 together, zusammen
 token, the, das Zeichen, -s, —
 tolerable, ziemlich
 tolerably, erträglich, ziemlich
 Tom Fool, Hans Narr
 to-morrow, morgen
 ton, the, die Tonne, *pl. -n*
 tone, the, der Ton, -s, -e
 tongue, the, die Zunge, *pl. -n*; die Sprache, *pl. -n*
 too, auch, zu; — much, zu sehr, zu viel
 tool, the, das Werkzeug, -s, -e
 topio, the, der Gemeinplatz, -es, -e
 torpid, träge
 torture, the, die Marter, *pl. -n*; die Qual, *pl. -en*; die Tortur, *pl. -en*
 totally, gänzlich
 totter, to, wanken, wankenden Schrittes gehen
 touch, to, berühren, anrühren; — malt liquor, Spirituosen über die Rippen bringen
 touching, rührend

towards, gegen, in der Richtung nach
 town, the, die Stadt, *pl.* —e; —
 residence, die Stadtwohnung, *pl.*
 -en
 toy, the, die Spielsache, *pl.* -n
 trace, the, die Spur, *pl.* -en
 trace, to nachspüren
 track, the, die Straße, *pl.* -n
 trade, the, das Geschäft, -es, -e;
 das Handwerk, -s, e; der Handel,
 -s, no *pl.*
 tragedy, the, das Trauerspiel, -s, -e
 train, the, der Zug, -s, —e
 train of attendants, a, ein Gefolge
 von Begleitern, Dienern; große
 Dienerschaft
 train, to, (educate), bilden, *w. v.*;
 erziehen, *str. v. insep.*
 transact, to, verhandeln, Geschäfte
 erledigen
 transaction, the, die Verhandlung,
pl. -en
 transfer, to, übertragen, *str. v. insep.*
 translation, the, die Übersetzung, -en
 transversal beam, der Querbalken,
 -s, —
 treacle, der Sirop, -s
 tread, to, betreten, *str. v. insep.*;
 wandeln
 treasure, the, der Schatz, -es, —e
 treasury, the, die Schatzkammer,
pl. -n
 treat, to, behandeln
 treatise, the, die Abhandlung, *pl.* -en
 treaty, the, der Vertrag, -s, —e;
 by —, vertragsmäßig
 tremble, to, zittern, zagen
 trial, the, der Prozeß, -fßes, -fße; to
 bring to —, jemandem den Prozeß
 machen
 trick, the, der Kniff, -s, -e; das
 Kunststück, -s, -e

trifle, the, die Kleinigkeit, *pl.* -en;
 die Nichtigkeit, *pl.* -en
 trifling, *adj.*, unbedeutend, eine
 Kleinigkeit
 trim, to, verbrämen
 triumph, the, der Triumph, -s, -e;
 triumph, to, triumphieren
 troop, the, die Truppe, *pl.* -n
 trot, to, traben
 trouble, the, die Mühe, *pl.* -n
 trouble, to, stören, belästigen; —
 the book-shelves, sich um die
 Bücherbretter kümmern
 truant, the, der Schulschwänzer, -s,
 —
 true, wahr, wahrhaft, wahrhaftig
 truly, wahrhaftig, der Wahrheit
 gemäß
 truth, the, die Wahrheit, -en; die
 Thatsache, die Wirklichkeit
 try, to, versuchen
 tub, the, die Badewanne, *pl.* -n
 tumbler, the, das Glas, -ses, —ser
 turf, the, der Rasen, -s
 turn, to, wenden, *str. or w. v.* ; sich
 wenden, drehen
 turn away, to, sich wegwenden, *str.*
or w. v. sep.
 turn round, to, sich umdrehen, *w.*
v. sep.
 twelve, zwölf
 twenty, zwanzig
 twice, zweimal
 twinkle, to, schimmern
 twist, to, zusammendrehen
 twisted, gewirrt, gesponnen
 twitch off, to, abziehen, ausziehen,
str. v. sep.
 tyrant, the, der Tyrann, -en, -en

U

ugly, häßlich

unanimous, einstimmig
 unacquainted, unbekannt
 unbounded, grenzenlos, unbegrenzt
 uncertain, ungewiß, unzuverlässig
 uncle, the, der Onkel, -s, —; der
 Oheim, -s, -e
 unconquerable, unbefiegbar
 uncorrupt, unbefleckt
 undaunted, unerschrocken
 undermine, to, unterminieren,
 untergraben; undermined health,
 wacklige Gesundheit
 understand, to, verstehen, *str. v. insep.*
 undertaker, the, der Leichenbe-
 statter
 under-turnkey, the, der Unter-
 schließer, -s, —
 undeveloped, unentwickelt
 undoubtedly, ohne Zweifel, un-
 zweifelhaft
 unequal, ungleichmäßig
 unequalled, unvergleichlich
 unfinished, unfertig
 unfortunately, unglücklicherweise
 unheard, ohne gehört zu werden, un-
 gehört
 unheard of, unerhört
 unhurt, unverfehrt
 illuminated, erleuchtet, dunkel
 uniform, the, die Uniform, *pl. -en*;
 the Windsor —, die Hockfleidung
 unintelligible, unbegreiflich
 uninterrupted, ununterbrochen
 unite, to, (sich) vereinigen, verbinden,
str. v. insep.
 united, vereinigt, eines Sinnes
 university, the, die Universität, *pl.*
 -en
 unjust, ungerecht
 unknown, unbekannt
 unlearn, to, vergessen, *str. v. insep.*

unlike, ungleich, unähnlich
 unpretending, bescheiden
 unrespected, ungeachtet, verachtet
 unrivalled, unbergleichlich, ohne
 gleichen
 unsocial, ungesellig
 unsuited, unpaßend, unpaßend ein-
 gerichtet
 unsuspected, ungeahnt
 untamable, nicht zu zähmen, unbe-
 zähmbar
 untasted, entbehrt, nicht gekostet
 until, bis
 untractable, störrig
 unusual, ungewöhnlich, ungewohnt
 unwieldy, unbehilflich
 unwonted, außergewöhnlich
 up, auf; (of stars), aufgegangen
 up at, nach — hinauf, bis nach
 up to, bis, bis zu, bis an, bis auf
 upholstery, das Zimmergerät, -s, -e;
 die Möbel (*pl.*)
 upon, auf; — them, darauf
 upstairs, oben, die Treppe hinauf
 upstairs, to come, herauf kommen,
str. v.
 urchin, the, der Bengel, -s, —
 us, uns, unser, uns, uns
 use, the, der Nutzen, -s; der Gebrauch,
 -s; for the use of, zum besten,
 zum Nutzen; to be of use, nützen,
 dienen, helfen, *str. v.*; it is of no
 use, es hilft (nützt) nichts; of what
 use is, was hilft es, was nützt es
 use, to, (be in the habit), pflegen
 useless, nutzlos, unnütz
 usher, the, der Hilfslehrer, -s, —
 utter, to, aussprechen, *str. v. sep.*

V

vagabond, the, der Vagabunde, -n,
 -n; der Strolch, -s, -e

vagary, the, die Saune, *pl.* -en; —
 of fortune, die Saune des Zufalls
 vain, eitel
 vainly, vergebens
 valour, the, die Tapferkeit
 value, the, der Wert, -es, -e
 value, to, abschätzen, — at, auf
 vanity, the, die Eitelkeit, *pl.* -en
 vantage ground, the, die vorteilhafte
 Stellung
 variety, the, die Mannichfaltigkeit,
pl. -en
 various, verschieden
 vary, to, sich ändern, veränderlich sein
 vast, ungeheuer, weit; a — deal,
 sehr viele
 vastly, außerordentlich, ungemein
 vaunt, to, rühmen
 real, the, das Kalbfleisch -s; der
 Kalbsbraten
 vegetable, *adj.*, vegetabilisch
 vegetation, the, der Pflanzenwuchs,
 -es; die Vegetation
 veil, the, der Schleier, -s, —
 velvet, the, der Samt, -es
 venerable, ehrwürdig
 ventilation, the, die Ventilation,
 die Luftreinigung
 venture, to, sich erlauben, wagen
 verb, the, das Verbum, -s, -en; das
 Zeitwort, -s, -er
 verbal, mündlich
 verse, the, der Vers, -es, -se
 very, sehr, recht, schon; to the —,
 bis grade auf, bis mitten auf, bis
 an; the —, dieser selbige
 vice, the, das Laster, -s, —
 vice-president, the, der Vice-
 Präsident, -en, -en
 vicious, böse, lafterhaft
 victorious, siegreich
 victory, the, der Sieg, -s, -e

view, the, der Anblick; at first —
 beim ersten Anblick
 vile, schlecht, böse, niederträchtig
 village, the, das Dorf, -s, -er; —
 school, die Dorfschule
 villain, the, der Schuft, -es, -e
 vine-leaf, the, das Weinblatt, -s, -er
 violently, gewaltig, mit Gewalt
 virtue, the, die Tugend, *pl.* -en; die
 Kraft, *pl.* -e
 visible, sichtbar
 visit, the, der Besuch, -s, -e; der
 Ausflug nach (to)
 voice, the, die Stimme *pl.* -n
 volume, the, der Band, -s, -e
 vow, the, das Gelübde, -s, —
 vow, to, geloben, ein Gelübde ablegen.

W

wag, to, wedeln
 wailings, der Jammer
 waistcoat, the, die Weste, *pl.* -n
 waiter, the, der Kellner, -s, —
 wake, to (be awake), wachen; (—
 np), erwachen, aufwachen
 walk, the, der Gang, -s, -e; der
 Spaziergang; to go for a —,
 spazieren gehen, einen Spaziergang
 machen
 walk, to, gehen, *str.* v.
 walk about, to, auf und ab gehen
 walk (through water), to, waden
 wall, the (of a town, house), die
 Mauer, *pl.* -n; (of a room), die
 Wand, *pl.* -e; (of a box), die
 Seite, -n
 want, the, das Bedürfnis, -es, -e;
 der Mangel (an)
 want, to, (to desire), wollen,
 wünschen; (to be without),
 entbehren
 wanting, entbehrend, ohne

war, the, der Krieg, -s, -e
 warm, to, erwärmen, wärmer machen
 warming, das Erwärmen, die Erwärmung
 warmth, the, die Wärme
 warrior, the, der Krieger, -s, —
 wary, vorsichtig
 wash, to, waschen, *str. v.*
 watch, to, beobachten
 watch for, aufpassen (auf etwas)
 water, the, das Wasser, -s, *pl.*
 unusual, either " or —
 water-lily, the, die Wasserlilie, *pl. -n*
 wax-candle, the, das Wachsflicht, *pl. -e*; die Kerze, *pl. -n*
 way, the, (road), der Weg, -s, -e; die Landstraße, *pl. -n*; the way out, der Ausweg; to lose the way, sich verirren
 way, the, (manner), die Art, *pl. -en*; die Weise, *pl. -n*; pretty ways, nette Manieren; not in any —, in keinerlei Weise
 we, wir
 wealth, the, der Reichtum, -s, —er; das Vermögen, -s
 weakness, the, die Schwäche, *pl. -n*
 wean, to, entwöhnen
 weapon, the, die Waffe, *pl. -n*
 wearing-apparel, die Kleidungsstücke (*pl.*)
 weather, das Wetter, -s
 weaving, the, das Weben, -s; — das Gewebe, -s, —
 weed, the, das Unkraut, -s, —er
 week, the, die Woche, *pl. -n*
 weigh, to, wiegen, *str. v.*
 welcome, willkommen
 welcome, to, bewillkommen, *w. v.*; willkommen heißen, *str. v.*
 well, gut, wohl, nun denn; as — as, sowohl als auch

Welsh, weißsch, von Wales, walliser
 wet, *adj.*, naß
 whale, the, der Walfisch, -es, -e
 whatever, was auch immer, alles was
 wheat, the, der Weizen, -s
 wheel, the, das Rad, -s, —er
 when (referring to a single event), als; (referring to a repeated event), wenn; (used relatively), und dann
 whence, woher
 whenever, jedesmal daß (wenn)
 where, wo
 whether, ob; whether . . . or, sei es . . . oder
 while, während; all the —, die ganze Zeit
 whilst, während
 whisper, the, das Geflüster, -s
 whisper, to, flüstern; ganz leise sagen
 whistle, the, die Pfeife, *pl. -n*
 white, weiß
 whiting, the, der Wittling, der Weißling, -s, -e
 whole, ganz; the —, das Ganze, -n
 wholly, ganz, durchaus
 why, warum, weshalb; (expletive, beginning a speech), je nun, ei, nun
 wicked, gottlos, böse
 wide, widely, weit, breit
 widow, the, die Wittve, *pl. -n*
 wild, wild
 will, the, der Wille, -ens; das Testament, -es; -e
 will, wollen, *irr. v.*
 wife, the, die Frau, die Ehefrau, *pl. -en*
 wig, the, die Perücke; bag-wig, Perücke mit Harnbeutel
 win, to, gewinnen, *str. v.*

wind, to, winden, *str. v.*
 window, das Fenster, -s, —
 wine, the, der Wein, -s, -e
 wine merchant, der Weinhändler,
 -s, —
 winter, to, überwintern, den Winter
 hinbringen, *str. v. sep.*
 winter-walk, the, der Wintersteig,
 -s, -e
 wintry, wintrig
 wisdom, the, die Weisheit, das
 Wissen, die Wissenschaft
 wise, weise
 wish, the, der Wunsch, -es, -e
 wish, to, wünschen
 with, mit, governs the *dat.*
 withal, zugleich, trotz alledem
 within, innerhalb; — the house,
 im Hause; enemies from —,
 innere Feinde
 without (*prep.*), ohne (with the
acc.)
 without (*adv.*), draußen; — doors,
 draußen, außer dem Hause; ene-
 mies from —, äußere Feinde
 wipe, to, wischen
 witness, the, der Zeuge, -n, -n
 woe, the, das Elend, -s; das
 Unglück, -s
 woe, *adj. and interj.*, wehe
 woman, the, die Frau, *pl. -en*
 wonder, to, sich wundern
 wonderful, wunderbar
 wood, the, das Holz, -es, -er; der
 Wald, -es, -er
 woolly, wollig
 work, the, (labour), die Arbeit, *pl.*
 -en; (result of labour), das Werk,
 -es, -e; at —, bei der Arbeit
 working room, the, das Arbeits-
 zimmer, -s, —
 workmanlike, kunstgerichtet

world, the, die Welt, *pl. -en*; die Erde
 worm, the, der Wurm, -s, -er
 worm-eaten, wurmfressig
 worn out, erschöpft, gebeugt
 worry, to, peinigen
 worse, schlimmer; — still, noch
 schlimmer
 worst, the, das Schlimmste
 worsted stockings, wollene
 Strümpfe
 worthy, the, der Ehrenmann, -s,
 -er; der Mann von Verdienst
 worthy, würdig
 wound, to, verwunden
 wrap, to, hüllen
 wretched, elend
 write, to, schreiben, *str. v.*; —
 down, nieder schreiben, *sep.*,
 aufschreiben, *sep.*
 writer, the, der Schriftsteller, -s, —
 writing, the, die Schrift, *pl. -en*
 wrong (incorrect, not according to
 rule), falsch, unrichtig; (not just
 or legal), unrecht; to be —,
 unrecht haben, unrecht thun.

Y

yacht, the, die Yacht, *pl. -en*
 yard, the, die Elle, *pl. -n*
 year, the, das Jahr, -s, -e
 yearly, jährlich
 yet, doch
 yield, to (produce), liefern
 yield profits, to, Gewinn abwerfen,
str. v. sep.
 you, du, deiner, dir, dich; ihr, eurer,
 euch, euch; Sie, Ihrer, Ihnen, Sie
 young, jung
 young people, Kinder
 youngster, the, der junge Bursche
 yourself, by —, allein
 youth, the, die Jugend.

Printed by T. and A. CONSTABLE, Printers to His Majesty
at the Edinburgh University Press

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

HACHETTE'S NEW SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

Compiled from the best texts available, and Edited for Schools and Candidates preparing for Examinations.

Cæsar, De Bello Gallico. Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A., B.L.L., (Lond.); *Examiner in the University of London and at the College of Preceptors; Lecturer at the City of London College, etc.*

Book I. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs. 6d.

Book II. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs.

Book III. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs.

* Book IV. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs. 6d.

* Book IV. With Vocabulary only. gd.

* Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. es.

* *The Latin-English Vocabularies in the above Latin Classics include numerous Idiomatic Phrases and Notes on personal and geographical Names. The Vocabularies to the Volumes indicated by asterisks can likewise be had separately without the Text, Price, each, in Paper Covers, 6d.; or the Vocabularies to Books IV. and V. of Cæsar, "De Bello Gallico," together in one Volume, Paper Cover, 9d.*

* Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Vocabulary and Map only. rs. 6d.

* Book V. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs. 6d.

Book V. With Vocabulary only. gd.

Books V. and VI. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. es.

Book VI. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. rs. 6d.

Book VII. With Vocabulary. gd.

Cicero, In Catilinam. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, etc., by Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Head Master of Cork Grammar School* :—

Books I to IV complete. Cloth, 2s. 6d.

Book I. Paper Cover, rs.

Books I. and II. (in one vol.). Cloth, rs. 6d.

Book III. Paper Cover, rs.

Book III. and IV. Cloth, rs. 6d.

Book IV. Paper Cover, rs.

Cicero, Pro Archia. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, etc., by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.), etc. Cloth. rs.

Cicero, Pro Lege Manilia. With Introduction, Notes, Analysis, Vocabulary, etc., by Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.), etc. Cl. rs. 6d.

"Treated with the greatest scholastic ease, fulness, and judgment. Copious Notes make every doubtful point plain and supply all necessary links of information. There could not possibly be a better text-book, nor one more complete for the young scholar."—*Irish Times*.

Ovid, Metamorphoses. Book XIII. With Introduction, Notes, Index of Proper Names, and Vocabulary, by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Head Master of Cork Grammar School*. Cloth. 2s.

"The text is elegantly printed. The Notes are those of a scholar who thoroughly appreciates the difficulties that lie in the path of the student; and the editing is most wholesome and careful."—*Irish Times*.

Ovid, Metamorphoses. Book XIV. With Life of the Author, Notes, Vocabulary, etc., by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. 2s.

Vergil, Æneid. Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A., B.L.L. (Lond.), etc. :—

Book I. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and brief Rules on Quantity. rs. 6d.

Book V. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and brief Rules on Quantity. rs. 6d.

Book IX. With Vocabulary. gd. Vocabulary to Book IX. separately, 6d.

HACHETTE'S Catalogue with full particulars of above free on application.

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

Hachette's New Series of German Authors.

(The Editors' Names are placed in parenthesis.)

All volumes bound in Cloth unless otherwise indicated.

	s. d.		s. d.
*Benedix. Dr. Wespe. (E. L. Naftel)		*Lessing. Fables in Prose and Verse.	
Paper cover.	0 9	(E. L. Naftel.)	1 6
*Freitag. Die Journalisten. (Dr.		*Lessing and Gellert. Fabeln und	
J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6	Erzählungen. (E. L. Naftel)	1 6
*Goethe. Faust. (A. J. Ulrich)		*Lessing. Nathan der Weise. (A. J.	
Paper cover.	1 0	Ulrich). Paper cover.	1 0
*Goethe. Götz von Berlichingen.		*Niebuhr. Heroen-Geschichten.	
(A. J. Ulrich) Paper cover.	1 0	(A. Voegelin, M.A.)	2 0
Goethe. Hermann und Dorothea.		*Riehl. Kulturgeschichtliche No-	
(Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.) Paper		vellen. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6
cover.	0 9	*Riehl. Die Gansarben; Die Gerech-	
*Goethe. Iphigenie auf Tauris.		tigkeit Gottes. (Dr. J. F. Davis,	
(Dr. A. Weiss, M.A.)	1 0	M.A.)	2 0
Goethe. Prosa. Extracts from the		Schiller. Der Geisteseeher. (Rev.	
'Italienische Reise,' 'Aus meinem		C. Merk, M.A., Ph.D.)	2 6
Leben,' 'Götze von Berlichingen,		*Schiller. Gustav Adolf in Deutsch-	
etc., etc. (Dr. Buchheim, F.C.P.)	2 6	land, 1630-1632. (From 'History	
*Grimm. Märchen. (First Series.)	2 6	of the Thirty Years War.') (Dr.	
Popular Fairy Tales. (E. L. Naftel)	1 6	Bernhardt.)	2 0
*Grimm. Märchen. (Second Series.)		*Schiller. Jungfrau von Orleans.	
5 Popular Fairy Tales. (Naftel		(A. J. Ulrich). Paper cover.	0 9
and Bode.) Paper cover.	1 0	Schiller. Maria Stuart. (E. L. Na-	
*Gutzkow. Zopf und Schwert.		tel.) Paper cover.	0 9
(Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6	*Schiller. Der Neffe als Onkel. (Dr.	
*Hackländer. Der geheime Agent.		L. Hirsch.)	1 6
(Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 0	*Schiller. Der Neffe als Onkel.	
*Hauff. Das Bild des Kaisers. (Dr.		(A. J. Ulrich).	0 9
J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 0	Schiller. Der Parasit. (Rev. A. C.	
*Hauff. Märchen: Das Wirtshaus im		Clapin, M.A.) Paper cover.	0 9
Spessart. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6	Schiller. Prosa. Extracts from 'Der	
*Hauff. Märchen: Die Karawane.		Geisteseeher,' 'Der Abfall der	
(Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6	Niederlande,' 'Der dreissigjäh-	
Klass. Die deutschen Heldensagen:		rige Krieg,' 'Scenen aus Fresco,	
1. Hagen und Hilde. 2. Gndrun.		etc. (Dr. Buchheim, F.C.P.)	2 6
(Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 6	*Schiller. Wallenstels Tod. (A. J.	
Kotzebue. Der gerade Weg der		Ulrich). Paper cover.	0 9
beste. (Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.)		Schiller. Wilhelm Tell. (E. L. Na-	
Paper cover.	0 9	tel.) Paper cover.	0 9
Kotzebue. Die deutschen Klein-		*Schiller. Wilhelm Tell. (A. J.	
städter. (E. L. Naftel.) Paper		Ulrich). Paper cover.	0 9
cover.	0 9	*Zschokke. Goldmacherdorf. (G.	
*Lessing. Minna von Barnehelm.		Hein)	2 6
(Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2 0		

*Leading Events of Modern Warfare. Advanced German Readings, selected from Standard Authors, for Army Candidates and others (Dr. A. Weiss.) 2 6

*Half-Hours with Modern German Authors, including typical extracts from popular Writers of the Day. Choice pieces specially selected to accustom Candidates and others to every kind of style. (Dr. A. Weiss.)

PART I.—55 Selections.

PART II.—55 Selections.

Selections in Prose and Verse from German Authors of the Day, for Translation at Sight. Intermediate and Advanced. (Dr. A. Weiss.)

PART I.—Paper Cover.

PART II.—Paper Cover.

Contains the same pieces as Half-Hours with Modern German Authors (see above), but without Vocabulary, or any other 'Aid.'

* Volumes indicated by Asterisks have German-English Vocabularies appended.

Cornell University Library
arV16509

German prose composition:



3 1924 031 426 426
olin,anx

